**Учебно-методическое пособие**

**по английскому языку**

**для студентов специальности**

**“Правовое обеспечение национальной безопасности”**

**2018/2019 уч. год**

**(Рабочий вариант)**

**MODULE V**

**Chapter 9**

**NATIONAL SECURITY STRATEGY OF THE RUSSIAN FEDERATION**

**UNIT 1**

Lead-in

**1. What is meant by the term national security?**

**2. Read the definitions and decide which of them is the most comprehensive and precise.**

1. The protection or the safety of a country’s secrets and its citizens.

2. National security objectively means the absence of threats to acquired values and subjectively, the absence of fear that such values will be attacked.

3 National security is an appropriate and aggressive blend of political resilience and maturity, human resources, economic structure and capacity, technological competence, industrial base and availability of natural resources and finally the military might.

4. National security then is the ability to preserve the nation’s physical integrity and territory; to maintain its economic relations with the rest of the world on reasonable terms; to preserve its nature, institution, and governance from disruption from outside; and to control its borders.

5. National security is best described as a capacity to control those domestic and foreign conditions that the public opinion of a given community believes necessary to enjoy its own self-determination or autonomy, prosperity and wellbeing.

**3. What words and word combinations are associated with national security? Complete the chart with word combinations relating to national security.**

**Text 1**

**Russia’s National Security Strategy**

**Vocabulary**

1. national interests and strategic national priorities – национальные интересы и стратегические приоритеты

2. ensuring the country’s stable long-term development – обеспечение стабильного долговременного развития страны

3. short list of priorities – конкретный перечень приоритетов

4. to pursue a policy of constrain – проводить политику сдерживания

5. to consolidate the Russian Federation’s status – укреплять статус Российской федерации

6. mutually beneficial partnerships in the context of a multi-polar world – взаимовыгодное партнерство в рамках многополярного мира

7. improving economic competitiveness – повышение конкурентоспособности в экономической сфере

8. ensuring food security – обеспечение продовольственной безопасности

9. to prevent the uncontrolled traffic of GMO foods – предотвратить неконтролируемый оборот продовольственных товаров с содержанием ГМО

10. to increase and modernize the offensive weapons – увеличить выпуск и модернизировать наступательные виды оружия

11. continued expansion – постоянное расширение

12. the still-evident block approach очевидный блоковый подход

13. growing militarization and arms race – растущая милитаризация и гонка вооружений

14. agreements on arms control – договоры по контролю за вооружениями

15. NGOs (non-governmental organizations) – неправительственные организации

16. new “hot spots” – новые “горячие” точки

17. proliferation and use of chemical weapons – распространение и использование химического оружия

18. to run a high risk – подвергаться большому риску

19. the anti-constitutional coup d’etat in Ukraine led to a deep schism in the Ukrainiansociety – антиконституционный переворот в Украине привел к глубокому расколу в украинском обществе

20. stable ruble exchange rate – стабильный курс рубля

21. to reduce interest rates – уменьшить процентную ставку

22. the Middle and Far East – Ближний и Дальний Восток

23. the Korean Peninsula – Корейский полуостров

24. NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization) – НАТО (Североатлантический союз)

25. the EU (European Union) – ЕС (Европейский Союз)

**1. Read the text and identify the national strategic priorities** **and** **main problems Russia faces in strengthening national security.**

On the very last day of 2015, President Putin signed Russia’s National Security Strategy for 2016, updating the existing strategic planning document, which established the country’s national interests and strategic national priorities and home and foreign policy goals, targets and measures directed at strengthening national security and ensuring the country’s stable long-term development until 2020.

The National Security Strategy until 2020, which was approved by the president back in 2009, was a rather short list of priorities and apparently needed an update due to the changing environment Russia has found itself in.

Here are the major points of the new edition.

**Russia in the Modern World**

The document acknowledges that the strengthening of Russia, its independent foreign and internal policy prompts the US and its allies to initiate counteraction, as they are striving to maintain their dominant position in the world. Thus they pursue a policy of constrain of Russia, which envisages exerting political, economic, military and information pressure. Therefore, Russia’s national priority is consolidating its position as one of the leading world powers. The country’s long-term national interests are: consolidating the Russian Federation’s status as one of the leading world powers, whose actions are aimed at ensuring strategic stability and mutually beneficial partnerships in the context of a multi-polar world.

When it comes to national priorities, it emphasizes strengthening the country’s defenses protecting its constitutional system, sovereignty and territorial integrity, strengthening the national consensus, raising the quality of life, preserving and developing culture, improving economic competitiveness, and other principles of national security. Strategic tasks include ensuring food security through “ensuring Russia’s food independence”. In addition, the document calls for the accelerated development of Russia’s agriculture, increasing the effectiveness of government support for agribusiness, preventing the uncontrolled traffic of GMO foods and also training highly prepared specialists for the agricultural sector.

**Forming a New Polycentric World Order**

The process of forming a new polycentric world order is accompanied by a rise in global and regional instability. Conflicts are escalating due to the uneven global development and the growing differences between various countries’ levels of well-being, the struggle over resources and market access, [and] control over trade routes. Competition between states is being extended to values and societal developmentmodels, human, technological, and scientific potential.

The struggle for influence in the international arena involves the whole range of political, financial/economic, and information instruments. The potential of secret services is being utilized more actively.

**Role of Force, Relations with NATO and Block Approach**

The document acknowledges that the role of force continues to dominate in the international relationship. The strive to increase and modernize the offensive weapons only weakens the global security system and the system of international treaties and agreements on arms control.

The principles of equal and indivisible security are not being observed in the Euro-Atlantic, Eurasian and Asia-Pacific regions.

The expansion of NATO and its approach to Russia’s borders has created a threat to national security.

Expanding the force potential of NATO and endowing it with global functions which are implemented in violation of international legal norms, the block’s military activation, its continued expansion, and the approach of its military infrastructureto Russian borders, all create a threat to national security.

The still-evident block approach to resolving international problems is not facilitating their response to a whole range of challenges and threats. The growth of migration from Africa and the Middle East to Europe has revealed the bankruptcy of the regional system of security in the Euro-Atlantic region that was built on the basis of NATO and the EU.

The instigation of “color revolutions” is one of the main threats to Russia’s security. The regions neighboring Russia are characterized by growing militarization and arms race.

The most important threats to Russia’s state and societal security are “the activity of radical societal groups and organizations which are using nationalist and extremist religious ideology, of foreign and international NGOs and financial and economic organizations, as well as private individuals, aimed at undermining the unity and territorial integrity of the Russian Federation, destabilizing the political and social situation inside the country, including through inspiring ‘color revolutions’ and destroying traditional Russian spiritual and moral values.”

The document notes that the practice of overthrowing legitimate political authorities, provoking internal instability and conflict, is becoming more widespread.

In addition to the still-existing areas of instability in the Middle and Far East, in Africa, South Asia, and the Korean Peninsula, new “hot spots” have appeared and the territory not controlled by any government authority has expanded.

**The US Military-Biological Lab Network**

The document states that the US is expanding its network of military-biological laboratories on the territory of countries neighboring Russia. The world still faces a high risk of proliferation and use of chemical weapons, and also the uncertainty as to which foreign countries have biological weaponry or the means to develop and produce it.

There is also the danger that the number of nuclear weapons states will increase. Politically unstable countries run a high risk of seeing conventional weapons fall into terrorist hands, and the “physical protection of dangerous objects and materials” is in a critical state.

US and EU support for the anti-constitutional coup d’etat in Ukraine led to a deep schism in the Ukrainiansociety and an armed conflict.

The document notes that the West’s effort to counter the integration processes and to create hot spots in the Eurasian region is having a negative influence on Russia’s pursuit of its national interests.

The document emphasizes that the consolidation of an extreme right nationalist ideology, the deliberate effort to create a public image of Russia as an enemy is turning Ukraine into a long-term source of European instability located right next to Russia’s borders.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What kind of document is the Strategy of 2015?

2. How does the document describe Russia?

3. Why is consolidating Russia’s position as one of the leading world powers so important for the state?

4. How is it possible to ensure food security?

5. Why are conflicts escalating?

6. What is the significance of force for the state security?

**3. Translate the following word combinations from English into Russian.**

1. to establish national interests

2. the country’s stable long-term development

3. changing environment

4. to strive to maintain the dominant position in the world

5. ensuring Russia’s food independence

6. to escalate conflicts

7. to dominate in the international relationship

8. the still-evident block approach

9. aimed at undermining the unity and territorial integrity

10. physical protection of dangerous objects and materials

**4. Find English equivalents from the text to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. суверенитет и территориальная целостность

2. предусматривать внешнеполитическое давление

3. обеспечить взаимовыгодное партнерство

4. укрепление национального согласия

5. ускоренное развитие

6. региональная нестабильность

7. ослабить глобальную (всеобщую) систему безопасности

8. нарушение международно-правовых норм

9. подстрекательство к совершению “цветных” революций

10. свержение законных правительств

**5. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. The Strategy is a key strategic planning document that establishes the national interests and strategic national priorities of the Russian Federation, and home and foreign policy goals, targets and measures directed at strengthening national security and ensuring the country’s stable short-term development.

2. Thus they confront a policy of constrain of Russia, which envisages exerting political, economic, military and information pressure.

3. Therefore, Russia’s national priority is consolidating its position as one of the leading world powers.

4. The process of forming a new polycentric world order is accompanied by a fall in global and regional instability.

5. The still-evident block approach to resolving international problems is not facilitating their response to a whole range of challenges and threats.

**6. Match adjectives and nouns to form word combinations from the text.**

**Translate them into Russian.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. strategic | a. powers |
| 2. economic | b. partnership |
| 3. foreign | c. development |
| 4. leading | d. authorities |
| 5. beneficial | e. priorities |
| 6. accelerated | f. treaties |
| 7. growing | g. competitiveness |
| 8. offensive | h. policy |
| 9. legitimate | i. differences |
| 10. international | j. weapons |

**7. Fill in the gaps with the words from the box. List the most dangerous risks for Russia.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| self-government | weakens | foreign currency | attempts |
| exchange rate | strengthening | imbalance | socio-economic policy |
| stabilizing | influence | sovereign debt |  |

**Crisis Risk**

In view of the global economic \_\_1\_\_, there is a high risk of financial/economic crisis re-occurrence. “Against the background of structural imbalances in the global economy and the financial system, the growth of \_\_2\_\_, and energy market volatility, the risk of a repeated major financial and economic crisis remains high,” the document states. “The growing \_\_\_3\_\_\_ of political factors on economic processes, as well as individual countries’ \_\_\_4\_\_\_ to use economic methods, financial, trade, investment, and technology policies to achieve their geopolitical objectives \_\_\_5\_\_\_ the resilience of the international economic system,” the Strategy emphasizes. The document calls for \_\_6\_\_ the financial system, ensuring a stable ruble \_\_7\_\_. , and reducing interest rates.

The Strategy also implies the state will conduct \_\_\_8 \_\_. “In order to counteract the threats to economic security, government agencies and local \_\_9\_\_ entities in collaboration with civil society institutions will implement the state socio-economic policy which includes: … strengthening the financial system, ensuring its sovereignty, \_\_\_10 \_\_ ruble exchange rate, optimizing \_\_11 \_\_ regulation and monitoring, reducing interest rates …” the document states.

**8. Unscramble English paragraphs according to their Russian versions.**

Для предотвращения угроз национальной безопасности необходимо обеспечить социальную стабильность, этническое и конфессиональное согласие, повысить мобилизационный потенциал и рост национальной экономики, поднять качество работы органов государственной власти и сформировать действенные механизмы взаимодействия с гражданским обществом в целях реализации гражданами Российской Федерации права на жизнь, безопасность, труд, жилье, здоровье и здоровый образ жизни, на доступное образование и культурное развитие.

Increase the mobilization potential and growth of the national economy; in order to realize the right of every Russian citizen to life, security, work, housing, health and a healthy way of life, accessible education and cultural development; for the prevention of threats to national security; as well as improve the quality of work performed by state bodies and formulate effective mechanisms for their interaction with civil society; it’s essential to guarantee social stability, ethnic and denominational harmony.

В условиях глобализации процессов мирового развития, международных, политических и экономических отношений, формирующих новые угрозы и риски для развития личности, общества и государства, Россия в качестве гаранта благополучного национального развития переходит к новой государственной политике в области национальной безопасности.

As a guarantee of successful national development; as well as of international political and economic relations; Russia is transitioning to a new state national security policy; in the context of the globalization processes of world development; creating new threats and risks to the development of the individual society, and the state.

**Text 2**

**Vocabulary**

1. to sign a decree – подписать постановление

2. to evaluate the level of national security – дать оценку уровню национальной безопасности

3. the growth of consumer prices – рост цен на потребительские товары

4. fiscal support – финансовая поддержка

5. the basic indicators of national security – основные показатели национальной безопасности

6. disruption of normal functioning of state bodies – нарушение нормального функционирования государственных органов

7. destruction of military or industrial sites – уничтожение военных и промышленных объектов

8. destroying the unity and territorial integrity – нарушение единства и территориальной целостности

9. causing harm to the security of the RF – нанесение ущерба безопасности Российской Федерации

10. a long-term concept for the comprehensive development and improvement of law-enforcement organs and special services – долгосрочная концепция всестороннего развития и усовершенствование деятельности правоохранительных органов и спецслужб

11. reliable defense and protection of the state borders of the RF – надежная зашита и охрана границ РФ

12. nuclear and chemical weapons – ядерное и химические оружие

**1. Read the text. Make a plan of the text.**

On the 31st of December, 2015 President Vladimir Putin signed a decree adopting the new Russian Federation National Security Strategy. The corresponding document was placed on the official legal information portal. The new edition of the Strategy, prepared by the RF Security Council includes means of fighting against radicalism and terrorism.

1. The main indicators of the state of national security are designated in order to evaluate the level of national security, and include:

- the level of unemployment (as a proportion of the economically active population);

- the decile coefficient (the correlation between the incomes of the top and bottom 10% of the population);

- the rate of growth of consumer prices;

- the level of the internal and external state debt as a percentage of GDP;

- the level of fiscal support for health, culture, education and science as a percentage of GDP;

- the level of annual renewal of armaments, military and specialist equipment;

- the level of supply of military and engineering-technical cadres.

The list of basic indicators of national security can be made more precise in accordance with the results of monitoring the state of national security.

2. The main threats to national security in the sphere of state and public security are as follows:

- investigative or other activity by the special services and organizations of foreign countries, and likewise by individual persons, directed at causing harm to the security of the Russian Federation;

- the activity of terrorist organizations, groups and individuals, directed at violent changes to the constitutional system of the Russian Federation, the disruption of normal functioning of state bodies (including violent action against governmental, political and social actors), the destruction of military or industrial sites, enterprises and institutions providing for vital social activities, and intimidation of the population, including by means of nuclear and chemical weapons or dangerous radioactive, chemical and biological substances;

- the extremist activity of nationalist, religious, ethnic or other organizations and structures, directed at destroying the unity and territorial integrity of the Russian Federation, destabilization of the internal political and social situation in the country;

- the activity of transnational criminal organizations and groupings, connected to illegal trafficking of narcotic and psychotropic substances, weapons, ammunition and explosive substances;

- the persistent growth of criminal acts, directed against the individual, property, state power, public and economic security, and likewise acts connected to corruption.

3. In order to ensure state and public security:

- the structures and activity of federal organs of executive power are being improved, a National Anticorruption Plan is being implemented, a system of discovery and response to the global threats and crises of modernity is being developed, including international and national terrorism, political and religious extremism, nationalism and ethnic separatism;

- mechanisms for the forecasting and neutralization of social and interethnic conflicts are being created;

- a long-term concept for the comprehensive development and improvement of law-enforcement organs and special services is being formulated, social guarantees for their employees are being strengthened, scientific-technical support for law enforcement activity is being improved, promising specialist means and technologies are being adopted, a system of professional cadre training is being developed in the area of state and public security;

- a regime of secure functioning of the enterprises, organizations and institutions belonging to the country's military-industrial, nuclear, chemical and nuclear energy complexes, and likewise of essential support systems for the life of the population;

- the social responsibility of bodies providing state and public security is being increased.

One of the conditions of national security is the reliable defense and protection of the state borders of the Russian Federation.

The main threats to the border-related interests and security of the Russian Federation are the presence and possible escalation of armed conflicts near its state borders.

Security threats to borders include the activity of international terrorist and extremist organizations which base their emissaries and terrorist means in Russia and organize sabotage on Russian territory, and likewise the increased activity of transnational criminal groupings engaged in the illegal transfer across the Russian border of narcotic and psychotropic substances, goods and cargo, water and biological resources, other material and cultural valuables, and in the organization of channels for illegal migration.

A negative effect on the reliable defense and protection of Russia’s state borders is exerted by the insufficient level of development of border infrastructure and of technological equipment for border-related bodies.

**2. Title the text.**

**3. Answer the questions.**

1. Why is it necessary to update national security strategy?

2. What are the main indicators of national security?

3. Identify the main threats to national security of the Russian Federation.

4. How can state and public security be ensured?

5. What documents on border-related issues have recently been adopted? Use the Internet resources.

**4. With your partner match the verbs with nouns and adjectives to make collocations. Translate them into Russian.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. to improve | a. the unity and territorial integrity |
| 2. to sign | b. harm |
| 3. to destroy | c. the level of national security |
| 4. to adopt | d. the social responsibility |
| 5. to protect | e. the system of professional cadre training |
| 6. to evaluate | f. scientific-technical support |
| 7. to strengthen | g. a decree |
| 8. to implement | h. state and public security |
| 9. to increase | i. a plan |
| 10. to ensure | j. the Strategy |
| 11. to develop | k. social guarantees |
| 12. to cause | l. Russia’s state borders |

**5. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian economic terms.**

1. валовый внутренний продукт

2. уровень безработицы

3. финансовая поддержка

4. уровень роста потребительских цен

5. децильный коэффициент (соотношение между доходами 10% населения с максимальными и минимальными доходами)

6. уровень ежегодного обновления вооружения, военной и специальной техники

7. уровень обеспеченности военными и инженерно-техническими кадрами

8. уровень государственного внешнего и внутреннего долга в процентном соотношении от ВВП

**6. Translate the information into Russian in writing.**

**Nuclear Deterrence**

**Vocabulary**

1. strategic deterrence – стратегическое сдерживание

2. assigned combat readiness – заданная степень готовности к боевому применению

3. the Armed Forces of the Russian Federation – Вооруженные Силы РФ

4. critical infrastructure – объекты инфраструктуры

5. spread of terrorism, extremism, inter-religious and inter-ethnic enmity –

распространение терроризма, экстремизма, межрелигиозной и межэтнической вражды

6. proliferation of weapons – распространение вооружений

7. overthrowing legitimate regimes –свержение законных правительств

8. drug trafficking – незаконный оборот наркотиков

“Strategic deterrence and the prevention of international military conflicts is accomplished through supporting the nuclear deterrent potential at a sufficient level, and the assigned combat readiness of the Armed Forces of the Russian Federation and other armed formations.” At the same time, Russia is ready for further discussion on reducing nuclear arsenals. “In order to preserve strategic stability, Russia is ready for further discussion on reducing nuclear arsenals on the basis of bilateral agreements and multilateral formats.”

The RF Security Council Secretary earlier said that the Strategy included the ways of preventing the spread of radical ideology and its propaganda in mass media, and emphasized the importance of increasing the level of protection of critical infrastructure, key individuals, society, and the state as a whole against terrorist threats. According to him, the document openly states that spread of terrorism, extremism, inter-religious and inter-ethnic enmity was facilitated by the practice of overthrowing legitimate regimes using the “color revolution” and “hybrid war” methods.

“The appearance and consolidation of the influence by the terrorist organization which names itself the Islamic State is the result of the policy of double standards which is pursued by some countries in the realm of fighting terrorism,” the Secretary emphasized. “The result of such irresponsible actions was the prolonged instability in Afghanistan, Iraq, Libya, the war in Syria, widespread proliferation of weapons, organized crime, drug trafficking, and systematic violations of rights and freedoms of millions of people”.

**7. Read the text. Render it into English. Find the English equivalent to the following text using the Internet resources.**

Государственная политика в сфере обеспечения национальной безопасности и социально-экономического развития Российской Федерации способствуют реализации стратегических национальных приоритетов и эффективной защите национальных интересов. В настоящее время создана устойчивая основа для дальнейшего наращивания экономического, политического, военного и духовного потенциалов Российской Федерации, повышения ее роли в формирующемся полицентричном мире.

Реализация настоящей Стратегии призвана способствовать развитию национальной экономики, улучшению качества жизни граждан, укреплению политической стабильности в обществе, обеспечению обороны страны, государственной и общественной безопасности, повышению конкурентоспособности и международного престижа Российской Федерации.

**8. Study the scheme and answer the questions.**

**-** What is the legal foundation of the RF National Security Strategy?

- What aspects of social life does national security cover?

- Why is providing national security essential for any state?

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | National Security | | | | | | |  | | | | |
|  | |  | | | |  | | | | | | |  | | | | |
|  | |  | |  |  | | | | |  | | | |  |  | |  |
| Economic Security | | | |  | Social and Political Security | | | |  | Military Security | | | |  | Environmental Security | | |
|  |  | | | |  | |  |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | Foreign Security | | | |  | |  | Information Security | | |  |  | | | |  | |
|  |  | | | |  | | |  |  | | | |  | |
|  |  | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | | |
|  |  | |  | | | |  | | | | |  | | | |  | |
|  | | | External Component of National Security | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**Text 3**

**Threats in the Cultural Sphere**

**Vocabulary**

1. unlawful infringements against cultural objects – противоправные посягательства на объекты культуры

2. preserving and developing indigenous cultures – сохранение и развитие самобытной культуры

3. the stimulation of creative self-realization within the population – стимулирование творческого развития граждан

4. improving the material-technical basis of cultural and leisure establishments – улучшение материально-технической базы организаций культуры

5. acknowledging the primary role of culture in the rebirth and preservation of cultural-moral values – признание первостепенной роли культуры в сохранении и приумножении традиционных российских духовно-нравственных и культурных ценностей

6. creating a system of spiritual and patriotic education for Russian citizens – создание системы духовно-нравственного и патриотического воспитания граждан

7. the organization of leisure activities – создание условий для организации досуга

8**.** improving systems of cultural enlightenment – расширение культурно-просветительской деятельности

**1. Skim the text.**

**2. Work in groups of four.**

* **Discuss possible threats to national security in the cultural sphere. Suggest the countermeasures.**
* **Choose a representative of the group to report to the class.**

Strategic objectives ensuring national security in the cultural sphere are as follows:

- broadening access of large sections of the population to the best examples of national and foreign culture and art by creating modern territorially distributed information banks;

- creating conditions for the stimulation of creative self-realization within the population, by improving systems of cultural enlightenment, the organization of leisure activities and mass extracurricular artistic education;

- assisting the development of the cultural potential of Russia’s regions and supporting regional cultural initiatives.

The main threats to national security in the cultural sphere are the dominance of production of mass culture oriented towards the spiritual needs of marginalized groups, and likewise unlawful infringements against cultural objects.

Negative influences on the state of national security in the cultural sphere are intensified by attempts to revise perspectives on Russia’s history, its role and place in world history; and by the propagandizing of a lifestyle based on permissiveness and violence, or racial, national and religious intolerance.

In order to counteract threats in the cultural sphere, the forces of national security together with civil society institutions ensure the effectiveness of state regulation intended to support and develop national cultures, tolerance and self-respect, and likewise the development of international [in the sense of interethnic] and interregional cultural ties.

The strengthening of national security in the cultural sphere will be served by preserving and developing indigenous cultures within Russia’s multinational population, and the citizenry’s spiritual values; by improving the material-technical basis of cultural and leisure establishments; by reflecting the system of training of cadres and providing for their social welfare; by supporting the production and distribution of domestic cinematography; developing cultural tourism; establishing government contracts for the creation of cinematographic and printed works, television and radio programmes and internet resources; and likewise by using Russia’s cultural potential in the service of multilateral international cooperation.

In the medium and long term, the resolution of national security challenges in the cultural sphere are achieved by acknowledging the primary role of culture in the rebirth and preservation of cultural-moral values, by reinforcing the spiritual unity of the multinational population of the Russian Federation and the international image of Russia as a country with a very rich traditional and dynamically developing contemporary culture, by creating a system of spiritual and patriotic education for Russian citizens.

**- What are the most effective ways of resolving national security challenges in the cultural sphere?**

**3. Find English equivalents from the text to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. расовая, национальная и религиозная нетерпимость

2. обеспечение общественного благосостояния

3. многостороннее международное сотрудничество

4. вседозволенность и насилие

5.укрепление единства многонационального народа Российской Федерации

6. формирование государственного заказа на создание кинематографической и печатной продукции

7.внешкольное художественное образование

8. противостоять угрозам в культурной сфере

**4. Classify the adjectives from the text according to the suffixes. Use them in the sentences (in the story) of your own.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **–al** | **–ic** | **–ous** |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |

**5. Find in the text antonyms to the following words.**

**Uneducated, foreign, ancient, secular, danger, separation, minor, illiteracy, legal, material.**

**6. With your partner summarize the text.**

**Text 4**

**Threats to National Security in the Sphere of Health Care and National Health**

**Vocabulary**

1. the incomplete formation of a normative legal basis for healthcare oriented – не полностью сформированная нормативно-правовая база в сфере здравоохранения

2. uniform approaches to the diagnosis, treatment and rehabilitation of patients – единый комплексный подход к болезням и лечению

3. using promising information and telecommunications technologies – использование достоверной информации и средств телекоммуникации

4. increasing accessibility and implementing guarantees of medical assistance for the general population – обеспечение доступности медицинской помощи и реализация гарантий ее оказания населению

5. accessibility of psychoactive and psychotropic substances – доступность психоактивных и психотропных веществ для незаконного потребления.

6. low effectiveness of the medical insurance system – несовершенство деятельности системы медицинского страхования

7. the preventative orientation of healthcare –профилактическая направленность здравоохранения

8. appearance of large-scale epidemics and pandemics – возникновение эпидемий и пандемий

**1. Read the text.**

**2. Divide it into logical parts.**

**3. Express the main idea of each part.**

Strategic national security goals in the area of healthcare and the health of the nation are as follows:

- increasing life expectancy, decrease reducing disability and mortality;

- improving disease prevention and the provision of timely, qualified primary healthcare and high-technology medical aid assistance;

- improving standards of medical assistance, and likewise of the quality, effectiveness and safety of medicines.

One of the main threats danger to national security in terms of healthcare and national health is the appearance of large-scale epidemics and pandemics, the mass spread of HIV infection, tuberculosis, drug addiction and alcoholism, and the increased accessibility of psychoactive and psychotropic substances.

A direct negative effect on national security in the domain of healthcare and the health of the nation is exerted by the low effectiveness of the medical insurance system and the low quality of healthcare specialist training and retraining; the insufficient level of social warranty guarantees and wages for medical workers and insufficient financing for the system of high-technology medical assistance; the incomplete formation of a normative legal basis for healthcare oriented at increasing accessibility and implementing guarantees of medical assistance for the general population.

The state policy of the Russian Federation relating to healthcare and the health of the nation is geared at preventive medicine and also at preventing the spread of socially dangerous illnesses.

The main directions of national security policy in the sphere of healthcare and national health of the Russian Federation are determined in the medium term by the intensification of the preventative orientation of healthcare, focusing on preserving human health, and preserving the institution of the family, motherhood, fatherhood and childhood, as the foundations of social vitality.

The strengthening of national security in the area of healthcare and national health will be supported by enhancing the quality and accessibility of medical services, by using promising information and telecommunications technologies, by means of state support for promising pharmaceutical, biotechnological and nanotechnological research, and likewise by modernizing economic mechanisms involved in the functioning of healthcare and developing the material-technical base of state and municipal healthcare systems, taking regional particularities into consideration.

In order to counteract threats to healthcare and the health of the nation, the forces of national security in cooperation with civil society institutions ensure the effectiveness of state regulation in the area of standardization, licensing, and certification of medical services, in the accreditation of medical and pharmaceutical establishments, in the provision of state guarantees for receiving medical assistance and modernizing the system of obligatory medical insurance, and in the definition of uniform criteria evaluating the work of centres for treatment and prevention at the level of municipal formations and subjects of the Russian Federation.

The resolution of problems of national security in the sphere of healthcare and the health of the nation in the medium and long term is achieved by the following means:

- formulating national programmes (projects) for the treatment of socially significant diseases (oncological, cardiac-arterial, diabetic and phtisiological [respiratory] illnesses, drug addiction, alcoholism), alongside the development of uniform approaches to the diagnosis, treatment and rehabilitation of patients;

- developing an administrative system supervise overseeing the quality and accessibility of medical assistance, and the training of healthcare specialists;

- providing for the qualitative transformation of the structure of infections and for the liquidation of the preconditions of epidemics, including epidemics caused by particularly dangerous infectious pathogens, by developing and implementing promising technologies and national programmes of state support for disease prevention.

**4. Find English equivalents from the text to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. увеличение продолжительность жизни

2. быть направленным на профилактическую медицину

3. снижение уровня инвалидности и смертности населения

4. сохранение здоровья человека

5. предотвращение распространения опасных болезней

6. в области здравоохранения и здоровья нации

7. совершенствование качества и доступности медицинских услуг

8. в среднесрочной и долгосрочной перспективе

**5. Choose the right variant to make collocations from the text.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. strategic | purposes  targets  goals |
| 2. medical | care  aid  assistance |
| 3. national | security  defense  protection |
| 4.a normative legal | foundation  basis  base |
| 5. state | support  maintaining  maintenance |
| 6. drug | use  addiction  prevention |

**6. Find in the text synonyms to the following words and word combinations.**

Compulsory, to intensify, aid, persistence, danger, to define, up-to-date, to realize, important, to strike a blow against, maintenance, problem solving

**7. Complete the table with correct forms.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Verb** | **Abstract noun** | **Attribute/Participle** |
|  |  | assessable |
|  | security |  |
| to prevent |  |  |
| to assist |  |  |
|  | insurance |  |
|  |  | preserving |
| to direct |  |  |
|  | identification |  |
|  |  | developing |
| to found |  |  |
|  |  | administrative |
|  | provision |  |
|  |  | strengthening |
| to counteract |  |  |
|  |  | promising |
| to oblige |  |  |
|  | certification |  |

**8. With your partner discuss possible ways to overcome the difficulties in the sphere of health care. Report to the class.**

**9. Make short presentations on the threats to national security in different spheres of life.**

**-** Information security

- Economic security

- Environmental security

- Social and political security

**UNIT 2**

**National Security Agencies**

Lead-in

**1. Brainstorm. What agencies provide national security in the Russian Federation?**

**2. Fill in the chart with the names of the RF appropriate agencies. Use the Internet resources.**

**Text 1**

**Meeting of the Federal Security Service board**

**Vocabulary**

1. to review the results – подвести итоги

2. to set the tasks for the upcoming period – определить задачи на предстоящий период

3. in military counterintelligence – в области военной контрразведки

4. to carry out counterterrorist operations – проводить контртеррористические операции

5. joint statement on cessation of hostilities – совместные заявления по прекращению военных действий

6. to boost the efforts – приложить усилия

7. to put in place the conditions for starting the settlement process – создать условия для начала процесса урегулирования

8. to be fully aware – полностью осознавать

9. even contradiction-filled peace process – достаточно противоречивый процесс мирного урегулирования

10. conditions for bringing a swift end to the bloodshed – условия быстрого прекращения кровопролития

11.a full-fledged intra-Syrian dialogue – полномасштабный внутрисирийский диалог

12. ceasefire – прекращение огня

13. resolute combat – решительная борьба

14. to this effect – по этому делу

15. to take the same position – быть такого же мнения

16. to seal off Russia’s territory from these terrorists – изолировать Россию от этих террористов

17. in this respect – в этом отношении

18. to take timely action – предпринимать своевременные/незамедлительные действия ( меры)

19. to tighten monitoring of the refugee flow – ужесточить контроль за потоками беженцев

20. at the root of this refugee crisis – в корне этого кризиса, связанного с беженцами

21. Shanghai Cooperation Organization – Шанхайская организация сотрудничества

22. Collective Security Treaty Organization – Организация Договора о коллективной безопасности (ОДКБ)

23. Foreign intelligence organizations have stepped up their activity in Russia – зарубежные разведывательные организации активизировали свою деятельность в России

24. todefend our interests with determination and in accordance with our laws – решительно защищать наши интересы в рамках закона

25. to cut off all channels of access to confidential information – перекрыть доступ к конфиденциальной информации по каналам связи

26. to put a stop to the activity – пресечь деятельность

27. to step up this work – активизировать эту работу

28. to bolster the security service personnel’s social status – укрепить социальный статус сотрудников органов безопасности

29. armament programme – госпрограмма вооружения

30. state defense procurement programme – гособоронзаказ

**1. Read the text and identify the results of the FSS’s work and its priority tasks.**

**2. Divide the text into logical parts. What is the main idea of each part?**

February 26, 2016 Moscow

**President’s speech at a meeting of the Federal Security Service board**

President of Russia Vladimir Putin: Good afternoon, we are here today to review the results of the Federal Security Service’s work in 2015 and set the tasks for the upcoming period.

Let me start by thanking all of you, everyone working in the central office and the regional offices and special subdivisions, for your competent work to ensure Russia’s security and stable development. This includes the efforts of our colleagues working in military counterintelligence, ensuring, for example, the safety of our pilots carrying out counterterrorist operations in Syria and the anti-terrorist units working here inside Russia. To say a few more words about the Syrian issue, as you know, on February 22, Russia and the United States of America adopted a joint statement on cessation of hostilities in Syria. The purpose of this document is to give impetus to the efforts to resolve the Syrian conflict, more precisely, to boost the efforts to find a political solution and put in place the conditions for starting the settlement process.

Of course, we are fully aware that this will be a difficult and perhaps even contradiction-filled peace process, but peaceful settlement is the only possible way out of the crisis. We must put in place conditions for bringing a swift end to the bloodshed and then starting a full-fledged intra-Syrian dialogue with all constructive political forces taking part.

Russia and the United States of America adopted a joint statement on cessation of hostilities in Syria. This ceasefire does not apply to ISIS, Jabhat al-Nusra, or other terrorist organizations recognized as such by the UN Security Council. We will certainly continue our resolute combat against these groups.

As you know, today, all parties to the conflict have until midday Damascus time to confirm to either our American partners or us their commitment to the ceasefire. We are already receiving news to this effect. On February 27, starting at midnight Damascus time, the Syrian armed forces, Russia, and the US-led coalition will not conduct hostilities against those armed groups that declare their readiness to observe the ceasefire.

I hope that our American partners will take the same position. This is what is reflected in our joint statement. No one will forget that aside from ISIS, there are also other groups, as I said, that have been recognized as such by the UN Security Council.

It is important now to effectively seal off Russia’s territory from these terrorists trying to enter from the Middle East or other regions, and act swiftly to identify and neutralize those who are involved in terrorist activities abroad. In this respect, Russia in general and its armed forces took timely action in starting our operations in Syria. Your work here in Russia itself also confirms this. Your efforts have put a stop to the activities of underground groups that were planning attacks against our country. We all see your successes in organizing preventive work in this area. I particularly want to thank the colleagues responsible for these successes.

I hope you will continue to work in this same spirit and prevent the actions of not only those who plan attacks, but also those who recruit our citizens to terrorist organizations and spread extremist ideology.

We should tighten monitoring of the refugee flows coming into Russia or

transiting onwards to European countries. In this respect, I want to add that this refugee crisis began long before Russia began its antiterrorist operation in Syria. At the root of this refugee crisis is the destabilization of entire regions of the world, especially the Middle East. We see full well today what is happening with some refugees, on the Macedonian border, for example. They are refugees from Afghanistan. What have Russia’s operations in Syria got to do with them? Their situation is totally unconnected to our operations. Our operations have one sole aim: to stabilize the situation in these countries and create conditions for people from these countries to be able to return to their homes.

To fight terrorism more effectively, it’s also important to develop our cooperation with partners abroad, especially through the UN, Shanghai Cooperation Organization, and Collective Security Treaty Organization.

We should make use of all existing contacts and develop new forms of cooperation in this work, all the more so, as security agencies abroad are increasingly interested in developing such partnership, as we see well.

The counterintelligence services have important tasks today. At the last board meeting, you recall that we noted that foreign intelligence organizations have stepped up their activity in Russia, and this was convincingly confirmed over the last year. Over this time, we put a stop to the activity of more than 400 foreign intelligence officers and agents, with criminal charges brought against 23 of these people.

We need to ensure reliable protection of information on confidential activity and personnel in government organizations, military facilities, defense industry companies, the fuel and energy sector, and our leading research centers. We need to cut off all channels of access to confidential information.

The FSB and other agencies have the task of doing everything necessary to prevent the activity of those who attempt or might attempt to use nationalist, xenophobic or radical slogans to divide our society.

Of course, you must also prevent any attempts from outside to intervene in our election and our country’s political life. As you know, such methods exist and have been put to use in a number of countries.

Let me say again that this is a direct threat to our sovereignty and we will respond accordingly. I read the regular documents you prepare, read the summaries, and see the concrete indications that, regrettably, our ill-wishers abroad are preparing for these elections. Everyone should therefore be aware that we will defend our interests with determination and in accordance with our laws. Our country’s economic security is also very important. Last year, the fight against organized crime put a stop to the activities of 98 groups. The security agencies’ information shows that 2,200 people were charged under criminal law and found guilty of economic crimes.

Our country’s economic security is also very important. I ask you to step up this work and concentrate on fighting corruption, and misappropriation and embezzlement of budget money, especially the funds allocated for the state armament programme and the state defense procurement programme.

It is important to prevent any misappropriation of state funds, of course. But we should all be well aware that the large sums, enormous resources, you could say, that the country is investing in its defense capability not just today, but for the future, must be reliably protected from swindlers and schemers.

You should continue to give your attention to the question of ensuring our information security and neutralizing new threats emerging in this area.

More than 24 million cyber attacks against Russian government official sites and information systems were registered in the last year alone. More than 1,600 internet resources that conducted activities harmful to our security, including terrorist and extremist activity, were shut down.

It is clear that we need to improve the level of protection of our information and communication resources, especially those used for defense and national security needs, law and order, for our economic and financial system’s stable functioning.

Colleagues, the state authorities will continue to do everything possible to bolster the security service personnel’s social status, of course.

In 2015, for example, 98 apartment buildings for security agency personnel, with nearly 7,300 apartments, were completed. The total amount of service housing has been growing steadily.

Of course, the families of service personnel who lost their lives while performing their duty should receive our special care and attention.

In conclusion, I want to thank the FSB heads and personnel once more for the work done.

I am sure that you will continue to carry out all your duties to protect Russia’s national interests in the most professional fashion. Thank you for your attention.

**3. a) Form 10 nouns from the following adjectives. Use ( i)ty.**

Example. Able – ability, responsible – responsibility.

Safe –, mature –, capable –, stable – , active –, secure –, prior –, available –,

integral –, sovereign –.

**b) Make word combinations with the adjectives from task a) and nouns from the text.**

**4. Find in the text synonyms to the following words and word combinations.**

Security, to enhance, purpose, to blockade, to hinder, to interfere in, responsibilities, to be engaged in, under the law, interaction, to support, to be well informed.

**5. Choose the appropriate definitions to the words in the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| A refugee,counterintelligence, to ensure, ceasefire, a board, a swindler, security,  hostilities, settlement, embezzlement |

– the order to stop firing

– the state of being secure

– someone who obtains money by fraud

– an engagement fought between two military forces

– an agreement or resolution of a dispute

– the misappropriation of funds that have been entrusted to one for care or

management

– a person who has fled from some danger or problem

– to make safe or secure; protect

– a federal, state, or local government agency

– information gathered and activities conducted to protect against espionage

**6. Consult the text. Form set expressions.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. to resolve | a. the level of protection |
| 2. to conduct | b. the ceasefire |
| 3. to be charged | c. our information security |
| 4. step up | d. a political solution |
| 5. to ensure | e. cooperation |
| 6. to develop | f. the conflict |
| 7. to adopt | g. hostilities |
| 8. to improve | h. a joint statement |
| 9. to observe | i. under criminal law |
| 10. to find | j. the activity |

**7. Give English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. мирное урегулирование

2. прямая угроза нашему суверенитету

3. предприятия оборонно-промышленного комплекса

4. подтвердить приверженность прекращению огня

5. вмешиваться в политическую жизнь нашей страны

6. обеспечить безопасность и устойчивое развитие

7. пресекать любые попытки хищения государственных средств

8. антитеррористические подразделения

**8. In groups discuss and summarize the results and priorities of the RF FSS.**

**9. a) Translate the text into Russian.**

**Focus on the translation of shall + Infinitive. Use the Internet resources and consult the present Strategy.**

The state policy of the Russian Federation in the sphere of ensuring national security shall be executed through the concerted actions of all elements of the system for ensuring it under the direction of the president of the Russian Federation and with the coordinating role of the Russian Federation Security Council.

This Strategy shall be executed on a planned basis by consolidating the efforts and resources of organs of state power and local self-government organs, by developing their cooperation with institutions of civil society, and also by making comprehensive use of political, organizational, socioeconomic, legal, information, military, special, and other actions developed as part of strategic planning in the Russian Federation.

Oversight of progress in implementing this Strategy shall be exercised as part of the state monitoring of the state of national security; its results shall be reflected in an annual report of the secretary of the Russian Federation Security Council to the president of the Russian Federation on the state of national security and measures to strengthen it.

For the purpose of implementing this Strategy, improvement of the system of state administration and strategic planning in the sphere of ensuring national security and the socioeconomic development of the Russian Federation shall be pursued under the leadership of the Russian Federation president, strategic planning documents drafted and executed, and measures taken to train skilled specialists in the field of national security and strategic planning.

**b) Make up non-finite verb form word combinations with nouns from the text. Translate them.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. skilled | a. basis |
| 2. developing | b. the efforts |
| 3. drafted | c. use |
| 4. implementing | d. actions |
| 5. reflected | e. specialists |
| 6. ensuring | f. documents |
| 7. planned | g. the Strategy |
| 8. making | h. the cooperation |
| 9. concerted | i. national security |
| 10. consolidating | j. results |

# 10. Study the Constitution of the RF, the Federal Law of 28.12.2010 “On security”. Fill in the table with the agencies ensuring the RF national security in Russian and in English.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Russian | English |
| Президент Российской Федерации | The President of the RF |
|  |  |

**11. Study the present structure of the RF FSS.**

The 2003 statute further restructured the FSB into the following nine services:

* Counterintelligence Service
* Service for Protection of the Constitutional System and the Fight against Terrorism
* Directorate of Military Counterintelligence
* Economic Security Service
* Analysis, Forecasting, and Strategic Planning Service
* Organizational and Personnel Service
* Border Service
* Control Service
* Science and Technical Service

**12. Work in groups of four. Using the Internet resources describe the powers and responsibilities of each Department.**

**13. Make presentations on the following topics.**

- Functions and powers of the RF agencies ensuring national security.

- The origin of the FSS.

- The evolution through ages.

- Tasks and purposes of each present Department.

**Text 2**

**The View from Abroad**

**Vocabulary**

1. to wield immense power– пользоваться огромной властью

2. to be on the brink of imploding – на грани развала

3. to draw a direct line of inheritance – являться преемником ВЧК

4. the purges of the 1930s – “чистки” 30-х годов

5. to disband – распадаться (о СССР)

6. to dismember into separate agencies – разделиться на отдельные ведомства (организации)

7. to enter the business world as security consultants, fixers or businessmen in their own right – заниматься бизнесом в качестве консультантов по безопасности, “решал ” или самим становиться предпринимателями

8. to wear on the agency – занимать посты

9. to be catapulted into the top job after a career in the service’s lower echelons – взлететь по карьерной лестнице

10. at the helm of state-controlled companies – руководить государственными корпорациями

11. to lower down the chain of command– ослабить руководство

12. a blind eye was turned to FSB generals – не обращать внимание на деятельность генералов ФСБ

13.to take on geeks– привлекать к работе экспертов в области компьютерных технологий

14. a time-honored tradition – традиция, проверенная временем

15. to trawl the final-year students – проводить отбор среди студентов старших курсов

16. computer whiz-kids – компьютерные вундеркинды

17. an extraordinarily wide remit – чрезвычайно широкие полномочия

18. to release a humiliating video – снять видео, унижаающее человеческое достоинство

19. surveillance and harassment – слежка и травля

20. to pay a call on smb – позвонить кому-либо

**1. Read and translate the article.**

**2. Write out key words and word combinations to describe the author’s attitude to the Federal Security Service.**

[Shaun Walker](http://www.theguardian.com/profile/shaun-walker)

April 2016

The FSB is much more than just an ordinary security service. Combining the functions of an elite police force with those of a spy agency, and wielding immense power, it has come a long way since the early 1990s, when it was on the brink of imploding.

Today’s agency draws a direct line of inheritance from the Cheka, set up by Vladimir Lenin in the months after the Bolshevik revolution, to the NKVD, notorious for the purges of the 1930s in which hundreds of thousands were executed, and then the KGB. As the Soviet Union disbanded, the KGB was dismembered into separate agencies, and humiliated. The security services were forced into a new era of openness and researchers were allowed into the archives for the first time to investigate the crimes of the Stalin period.

Many of the brighter or entrepreneurial KGB operatives left the agency in the chaos of the 1990s, using their contacts and know-how to enter the business world as security consultants, fixers or businessmen in their own right. They included the current owner of the Evening Standard and the Independent, Alexander Lebedev, previously a junior officer working out of the Soviet embassy in London, who used his knowledge of how international financial markets to make his fortune.

As the 1990s wore on the agency got back on its feet and in 1999 Boris Yeltsin asked its then director, [Vladimir Putin](https://www.theguardian.com/world/vladimir-putin), who had recently been catapulted ninto the top job after a career in the service’s lower echelons, to become prime minister.

With Putin as PM and then president, much of the FSB’s power was restored. Many of his former KGB colleagues ended up in senior positions in government or at the helm of state-controlled companies. Lower down the chain of command, a blind eye was turned to FSB generals enriching themselves: it was no longer necessary to leave to earn a good living. One top officer complained that the secret service "warriors" had become "traders".

Despite its reputation as a slow-moving bureaucracy, the FSB has long taken on geeks who can help it stay ahead of the game technologically. In a time-honored tradition, the agency trawling the final-year students of the country's top technology institutes and inviting the best graduates to apply.

The agency has its own special institute known as IKSI, the Institute of Cryptography and Protection of Information, which used to work on code breaking but now focuses on information security. Its page on the FSB website boasts that more than 200 professors work at the IKSI, teaching students everything there is to know about computer systems and security. The only downside for computer whiz-kids is that salaries in the FSB, officially at least, are far lower than they would be at major tech firms.

Unlike the KGB, the FSB is not in charge of foreign spies. The responsibility for running agents like such as Anna Chapman and the nine other spies caught by US authorities, has passed to a separate agency, the SVR. But internally, the FSB has an extraordinarily wide remit.

When alleged CIA operative Ryan Fogle was caught with a blond wig and a compass, apparently attempting to recruit Russian counterintelligence officers for the US this year, it was the FSB who picked him up, interrogated him and released a humiliating video.

Its border guards, who have been under FSB control since 2003, stormed Greenpeace ship the Arctic Sunrise in September, descending from helicopters wielding guns and knives. The agency is also strongly involved in combating "economic crimes", and is responsible for most counterintelligence operations. Western diplomats report a huge rise in surveillance and harassment from people they presume to be FSB agents, with foreign journalists and businesses also targeted.

The agency still operates from the Lubyanka, the central Moscow building notorious during the Soviet era for interrogations in its basement cells. There are no official figures on how many people the FSB employs, but the security services expert Andrei Soldatov estimates the number to be at least 200,000.

After the 2006 death of former FSB officer Alexander Litvinenko from polonium poisoning, in which Scotland Yard strongly suspected some level of state involvement, Britain announced a moratorium on all co-operation between the FSB and British security services. This stayed in place until May, when David Cameron paid a call on Putin at his summer home near Sochi. The leaders agreed that with the Sochi [Olympics](https://www.theguardian.com/sport/olympics-general) approaching, Britain would resume "limited" co-operation to ensure the security of competitors and spectators.

**3. Work in groups of four. Describe the author’s attitude to the Federal Security Service (positive/negative)? Give your arguments.**

**Role-play “National Security Service of the RF and the role of FSS”**

Conduct the press conference. Participants of the conference are FSS representatives, Russian and foreign journalists. The press conference is devoted to the FSS’s activity in providing national security of the Russian Federation. Students prepare questions to be asked at the conference.

**Use the following phrases**

Introducing and starting a meeting

I’d like to start by formally welcoming Bruno.

OK, if we could start by looking at the first item on the agenda.

Shall we make a start?

I think we’re all here, so let’s get going.

Closing a point

So that deals with the question of ...

OK, let’s leave it there.

Introducing the next point

I’m very conscious of time, so I want to move on to the next item on the agenda. Right, so, moving on. The next item is ...

OK, let’s move on to the next point. /Shall we go on to look at... now?

Allowing someone to comment

Has anyone got any thoughts?

Alice, perhaps you could give a brief report on this.

Perhaps I could bring in Carla at this point.

Darren, would you like to add anything?

Francine, can you give us an update on ... ?

Referring to a document

You’ll see that I’ve highlighted some of the items which concern me most.

Now, you’ve got a detailed report in front of you, which I hope you’ve all had a chance to look at.

If you could just look at points one and four in particular.

Asking for clarification

Is that correct?

I wonder if you could just clarify what you mean by ... ?

Could you give me some specific information?/Could you be more specific?

To put my mind at rest, could you send me ...?

What exactly do you mean by ...?

Can you just run that by me again? Basically what you’re saying is ...

So, if I understand you correctly, .../And, correct me if I’m wrong, ...

I just wanted to check .../Did you say ...?

Giving clarification

I hope everything is now clear.

Exactly / That’s right.

Not exactly.

It’s hard to say.

Responding to clarification

Many thanks for the information.

Everything is now clear.

Expressing appreciation

I just wanted to thank you for all your hard work.

I’d like to say it’s been a pleasure working with you.

I really appreciate what you’ve done.

It was an honor to have you involved.

You’ve helped the project go really smoothly.

Expressing disapproval

To be honest, I didn’t think much of it.

In fact I thought it was pretty weak.

Acknowledging appreciation

Thank you, that’s very kind.

No problem. /My pleasure. /Don’t mention it/.

Closing a meeting

Unless anyone has any other business ... I think we can bring things to a close.

I think that’s everything.

To sum up, we’ve sorted out the problem of ..., we’ve ...

Can we just recap what we’ve decided?

Have I missed anything?

Thank you all for your contributions. /Thank you all for coming.

I have to say I think it’s been a very useful meeting

**How to Find the Main Idea**

Finding the main idea of a paragraph or longer passage of text, along with making an [inference](https://www.thoughtco.com/how-to-make-an-inference-3211647), finding the [author's purpose](https://www.thoughtco.com/what-is-the-authors-purpose-3211720), or [understanding vocabulary words](https://www.thoughtco.com/understanding-vocabulary-words-in-context-3211741) in context, is one of the reading skills important to master.

**What is the Main Idea?**

The main idea of a paragraph is the *point of the passage, minus all the details.* It is the main point or concept that the author wants to communicate to the readers about the topic. Hence, in a paragraph, when the main idea is stated directly, it is expressed in what is called the *topic sentence*.

The main idea is the brief, but all-encompassing summary. It covers everything the paragraph talks about in a general way, but does not include the specifics.

When an author does not state the main idea directly, it should still be implied*,*and is called an *implied main idea.*This requires that the reader looks closely at the content - at specific words, sentences, images that are used and repeated - to deduce what the author is communicating.

Finding the main idea is critical to understanding what you are reading. It helps the details make sense and have relevance, and provides a framework for remembering the content.

**How to Find the Main Idea**

***Identify the Topic***

Read the passage through completely, then try to identify the topic. Who or what is the paragraph about?

***Summarize the Passage***

After reading the passage through thoroughly, summarize it in your own words in **one sentence** that includes the gist of every idea from the paragraph. A good way to do this is to pretend you have just ten words to tell someone what the passage is about.

***Look at the First and Last Sentences of the Passage***

Authors often put the main idea in or near either the first or last sentence of the paragraph or article.

Determine whether either of these sentences capture the main idea. Sometimes, however, the author will use what is called a *reversal transition* in the second sentence - words like *but*, *however*, *in contrast*, *nevertheless*, etc. - that indicate that the second sentence is the main idea. If you see one of these words that negate or qualify the first sentence, that is a clue that the second sentence is the main idea.

***Look for Repetition of Ideas***

If you read through a paragraph and you have no idea how to summarize it because there is so much information, start looking for repeated words, phrases, ideas or similar ideas.

**Avoid Main Idea Mistakes**

Choosing the main idea from answer choices is different than composing the main idea on your own. By reading the passage through thoroughly, using your skills, and identifying the main idea on your own, though, you can avoid making these [3 common mistakes](https://www.thoughtco.com/avoid-common-main-idea-mistakes-3211751) - 1) selecting an answer that is too narrow in scope;

2) selecting an answer that is too broad; 3) or selecting an answer that is complex but contrary to the main idea.

**Writing a summary**

**I. Three principal requirements.**

1. It should offer a balanced coverage of the original.

2. It should present the source material in a neutral fashion. (No evaluations of any kind are allowed).

3. It should condense the source material and be presented in the summary in writer’s own words.

**II. Steps in writing a summary.**

1. Skim the text, noting in your mind the subheadings. If there are no subheadings, try to divide the text into subsections. Try to determine what type of a text you are dealing with. This can help you identify important information.

2. Read the text, highlighting important information or taking notes.

3. In your own words, write down the main points of each section. Try to write down one sentence of each section.

4. Write down the key support points for the main topic, but do not include the minor detail.

5. Go through the process again, making changes as appropriate.

**Check List**

1. The first sentence of your summary includes the name of the author of the original, its title, date of publishing and the main idea.

2. Your summary is of the required length; it is considerably shorter than the original text.

3. Your summary doesn’t include the minor details of the text.

4. The summary covers all the parts of the original.

5. You don’t include your own comments or evaluation.

6. You don’t copy portions of the original. Instead you paraphrase the material (except specialized vocabulary or technical terms).

7. When necessary you use quotations.

* Quote accurately. Be careful to avoid mistakes of any kind. After copying a passage always proofread your version, comparing it with the original.
* Use quotation marks to indicate the beginning and the end of the quotation.
* Use ellipses/dots ( … ) to indicate that you have deliberately omitted words in writing out the quotation. Be careful not to make an omissions that describe the original.
* Use brackets ( … ) to make explanatory words added within a quotation.

8. Your summary includes enough support and detail.

9. You maintain the flow of your summary by using transitions.

* The author goes on to say that …
* The article further states that …
* The author also argues/assumed /believes …
* The author concludes that …
* In the second half of the paper the author presents …
* Additionally
* In addition to
* Besides
* Also
* Further to
* Furthermore
* Moreover

**Reporting words**

To describe

To discuss

To state

To present

To explain

To maintain

To examine

To affirm

To argue

To reveal

To presume

To assume

To assert

To contend

To allege

To claim

To imply

**Chapter 10**

**NATIONAL SECURITY STRATEGY OF THE UK AND THE USA**

**UNIT 1**

**National Security Strategy of the UK**

Lead-in

**1. How do you see the approach of the UK to national security strategy of the state?**

**2. Is this approach similar to that of the Russian Federation?**

**Text 1**

**Foreword by the Prime Minister**

**Vocabulary**

1. to take difficult decisions – принимать сложные решения

2. to restore our economy to strength – восстановить нашу экономику

3. to bring down our deficit – снизить дефицит

4. total black hole in the defense budget – черная дыра в оборонном бюджете

5. it is back in balance – баланс восстановлен

6. to stick to our long-term economic plan – придерживаться нашего плана развития экономики

7. to afford to invest further in our national security позволить себе дальнейшее инвестирование в нашу безопасность

8. to be vital – быть жизненно необходимым

9. hard-earned by taxpayers–с трудом заработанные деньги налогоплательщиков

10. to meet the NATO target – отвечать задачам НАТО

11. security and intelligence agencies – органы безопасности и спецслужбы

12. engagement is not an optional extra –договоренность не является дополнительным действием

13. the arteries of global commerce to remain free flowing – торговые пути остаются открытыми

14. with global reach and global influence – международное распространение и влияние

15. state-based threats – угрозы государства

**1. Read and translate the text. Decide whether your opinion is similar to that of David Cameron.**

Our national security depends on our economic security, and vice versa. So the first step in our National Security Strategy to ensure our economy is, and remains, strong. Over the last five years we have taken the difficult decisions needed to bring down our deficit and restore our economy to strength. In 2010, the total black hole in the defense budget alone was bigger than the entire defense budget in that year. Now it is back in balance. By sticking to our long-term economic plan, Britain has become the fastest growing major advanced economy in the world for the last two years. Our renewed economic security means we can afford to invest further in our national security. This is vital at a time when the threats to our country are growing. From the rise of ISIL and greater instability in the Middle East, to the crisis in Ukraine, the threat of cyber attacks and the risk of pandemics, the world is more dangerous and uncertain today than five years ago. So while every government must choose how to spend the money it has available, every penny of which is hard-earned by taxpayers, this Government has taken a clear decision to invest in our security and safeguard our prosperity. As a result, the United Kingdom is the only major country in the world today which is simultaneously going to meet the NATO target of spending 2% of our GDP on defence and the UN target of spending 0.7% of our GNI on development, while also increasing investment in our security and intelligence agencies and in counter-terrorism.

In ensuring our national security, we will also protect our economic security. As a trading nation with the world’s fifth biggest economy, we depend on stability and order in the world. With 5 million British nationals living overseas and our prosperity depending on trade around the world, engagement is not an optional extra, it is fundamental to the success of our nation. We need the sea lanes to stay open and the arteries of global commerce to remain free flowing. So this document sets out our National Security Strategy for the coming five years, and how we will implement it. It presents a clear vision for a secure and prosperous United Kingdom, with global reach and global influence. At its heart is an understanding that we cannot choose between conventional defenses against state-based threats and the need to counter threats.

**2. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. to restore the economy to strength

2. the total black hole

3. the fastest growing major advanced economy

4. intelligence agencies

5. GNI (Gross National Income)

6. optional extra

7. conventional defenses

**3. Find English equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1.снизить дефицит

2. оборонный бюджет

3. придерживаться долгосрочного плана развития экономики

4. риск эпидемии

5. принять четкое решение

6. морские пути

**4. In groups discuss the answers to the following questions.**

1. What does the UK’s national security depend on?

2. How is the defense budget described?

3. What are the vital threats to the UK?

4. What must the UK government do to the UK’s prosperity?

5. Why does the UK need sea lanes?

6. How might the UK policy change after Brexit?

**Text 2**

**National Security Strategy and Strategic Defense and Security Review Borders**

**Vocabulary**

1. over the course of this Parliament – данный состав парламента определил приоритеты

2. to tackle terrorism – бороться с терроризмом

3. to meet the priorities – соответствовать приоритетам

4. to harness all the tools of national power –использовать все инструменты государственной власти

5. two additional Typhoon squadrons – две дополнительные эскадрильи “Тайфун ”

6. Lightning combat aircraft – реактивный боевой самолет

7. new aircraft carriers – новые авианосцы

8. to protect nuclear deterrent – защищать политику ядерного сдерживания

9. to hunt down hostile submarines – следить за подводными лодками противника

10. to enhance our maritime search and rescue. – совершенствовать наши операции по поиску и спасению на море

11. to deploy rapidly and sustain them in the field – в кратчайшие сроки перебрасывать войска в состоянии боеготовности в район развертывания

12. expeditionary force – экспедиционные силы

13. to prevent and disrupt plots – предотвратить и раскрыть заговоры

14. the Middle East, North Africa, South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa –

Ближний Восток, Северная Африка, Южная Азия и Центральная Африка

15. to promote our interests and project our influence overseas – обеспечивать наши интересы и усиливать наше влияние за рубежом

16. refocusing our aid budget to support fragile –переориентирование нашего вспомогательного бюджета на поддержку ослабленных государств

17. Britain not only meets our obligations to the poorest – Британия не только выполняет свои обязательства перед беднейшими странами

18. to impinge on our security at home – влиять на нашу внутреннюю безопасность

19. agility of response – быстрота реакции

20. to work hand in glove with our allies – работать в тесном контакте с нашими союзниками

21. to underpin our security – укрепить нашу безопасность

22. to put their lives on the line every day–каждый день рисковать жизнью

**1. Read the text. Identify three measures to meet the priorities outlined by the Prime Minister.**

So over the course of this Parliament our priorities are to deter state-based threats, tackle terrorism, remain a world leader in cyber security and ensure we have the capability to respond rapidly to crises as they emerge. To meet these priorities we will continue to harness all the tools of national power available to us, coordinated through the National Security Council, to deliver a ‘full-spectrum approach’. First, over the last five years we have reconfigured Britain’s Armed Forces so they are able to deal with modern and evolving threats. Where necessary, we will be ready to use force. We will ensure that our Armed Forces continue to remain world-leading. We will establish two additional Typhoon squadrons and an additional squadron of F35 Lightning combat aircraft to operate from our new aircraft carriers. We will buy nine new Maritime Patrol Aircraft, based in Scotland, to protect our nuclear deterrent, hunt down hostile submarines and enhance our maritime search and rescue. We will create two new Strike Brigades, forces of up to 5,000 personnel fully equipped to deploy rapidly and sustain themselves in the field. By 2025, we will have a highly capable expeditionary force of around 50,000, up from the 30,000 we committed to in 2010. We will double our investment in our Special Forces’ equipment. In the longer term we will also increase the size of the Royal Navy’s frigate fleet. Second, we will do more to ensure our security and intelligence agencies have the resources and information they need to prevent and disrupt plots against this country at every stage. So we will invest an additional £2.5 billion, including employing over 1,900 additional staff and strengthening our network of counter-terrorism experts in the Middle East, North Africa, South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa. We will also increase our investment in counter-terrorism police and more than double our spending on aviation security around the world. Third, we will use our outstanding Diplomatic Service to promote our interests and project our influence overseas. We will use our formidable development budget and our soft power to promote British values and to tackle the causes of the security threats we face, not just their consequences. This includes refocusing our aid budget to support fragile and broken states and regions to prevent conflict – and, crucially, to promote the golden thread of conditions that drive prosperity all across the world: the rule of law, good governance and the growth of democracy. These interventions are not just right morally – they are firmly in our national interest. Our substantial aid budget means that Britain not only meets our obligations to the poorest in the world, but can now respond rapidly and decisively to emerging crises overseas which impinge on our security at home – and with this speed and agility of response comes greater influence in the world. Fourth, Britain’s safety and security depends not just on our own efforts, but on working hand in glove with our allies to deal with the common threats that face us all, from terrorism to climate change. When confronted by danger, we are stronger together. So we will play our full part in the alliances which underpin our security and amplify our national power. We will work with our allies in Europe and around the world – as well as seizing opportunities to reach out to emerging powers. History teaches us that no government can predict the future. We have no way of knowing precisely what course events will take over the next five years: we must expect the unexpected. But we can make sure that we have the versatility and the means to respond to new risks and threats to our security as they arise.

Our Armed Forces, our police and our security and intelligence agencies put their lives on the line every day. Their service is an inspiration to us all and they are the pride of our nation. Through this National Security Strategy and Strategic Defence and Security Review we will back them and use our hard-earned economic strength to support our Armed Forces, and to give those in our police and our security and intelligence agencies who fight terrorism the resources they need to help keep our country safe.

**2. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. nuclear deterrent

2. to underpin

3. to deter state-based threats

4. a “full-spectrum approach”

5. to reconfigure armed forces

6. to disrupt plots

7. the rule of law

8. to meet obligations

9. agility of response

10. to seize opportunities

11. to have versatility

12. intelligence agencies

**3. Match the words to form word combinations from the text. Use them in the sentences of your own.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. to protect  2. to face  3. to promote  4. to enhance  5. to meet  6. to deliver  7. to maintain  8. to ensure | a. priorities  b. the insurance policy  c. the interests  d. the approach  e. our security  f. the maritime search  g. nuclear deterrent  h. threats |

**4. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. Over the last five years the UK has ruined Britain’s armed forces.

2. The UK will double its investment in the Special Forces’ equipment.

3. In the longer term the UK will also increase the size of the Royal Navy’s frigate fleet.

4. The UK will invest an additional £1.5 billion including employing over 1,900 additional staff and strengthening the network of counter-terrorism experts …

5. The substantial aid budget means that Britain only meets the obligations to the poorest in the world, …

**5. Match the words from the text with their definitions. In the text find word combinations with these words and translate them into Russian.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. To deter  2. To tackle  3. To emerge  4. To enhance  5. To disrupt  6. To respond | a) to come out of smth or out from behind smth; to become known  b) to say or do smth as a reaction to smth that has been said or done  c) to interrupt smth and prevent it from continuing by creating a problem  d) to make someone decide not to do smth; to put off  e) to improve smth, or to make it more attractive or more valuable  f) to attack a person or place to try to hurt or damage them using physical violence |

**6. Work with your partner. Find the answers to the following questions.**

1. What steps must the UK’s government take to ensure national security and Strategic Defense?

2. What forces are described in the text?

3. What is the role of the UK’s Diplomatic Service?

4. What does the substantial aid budget mean?

**7. With your partner prepare a short overview of the National Security Strategy of the UK. Write an essay (not less 10-15 sentences).**

**Text 3**

1. **Work in pairs. Student A reads text A and student B reads text B.**

**2. Write out key words and make the plan to render the texts. Render the texts to each other. If you don’t understand anything ask for clarification and give explanations using the following phrases.**

Use the following phrases

Asking for clarification

* What does that mean?
* Sorry, I don’t follow you.
* I don’t understand that.
* I don’t know what that word means.
* That doesn’t make sense to me.
* I don’t get it.

Giving explanations

It’s quite straightforward.

Allow me to clarify.

Let me explain.

What this … means is …

It’s like this.

In other words

Thank you. Now I get it.

**David Cameron’s statement on the Strategic Defense and Security Review**

23 November 2015

**A**

**Growing Threats to Our Security**

Mr Speaker, this is vital at a time when the threats to our country are growing. This morning I was in Paris with President Hollande discussing how we can work together to defeat the evil of ISIL. As the murders on the streets of Paris reminded us so starkly, ISIL is not some remote problem thousands of miles away.

It is a direct threat to our security at home and abroad. It has already taken the lives of British hostages and carried out the worst terrorist attack against British people since 7/7 on the beaches of Tunisia to say nothing of the seven terrorist plots right here in Britain that have been foiled by our security services over the past year.

And of course, Mr Speaker, the threats we face today go beyond this evil death cult. From the crisis in Ukraine to the risk of cyber attacks and pandemics the world is more dangerous and uncertain today than five years ago.

So while every Government must choose how to spend the money it has available every penny of which is hard-earned by taxpayers this Government has taken a clear decision to invest in our security and safeguard our prosperity.

As a result, the United Kingdom is the only major country in the world today which is simultaneously going to meet the NATO target of spending 2% of our GDP on defense and the UN target of spending 0.7% of our GNI on development while also increasing investment in our security and intelligence agencies and in counter-terrorism.

Mr Speaker, in ensuring our national security, we will also protect our economic security. As a trading nation with the world’s fifth biggest economy, we depend on stability and order in the world.

With 5 million British nationals living overseas and our prosperity depending on trade around the world, engagement is not an optional extra, it is fundamental to the success of our nation. We need the sea lanes to stay open and the arteries of global commerce to remain free flowing.

So the strategy which I am presenting to the House today sets out a clear vision for a secure and prosperous United Kingdom, with global reach and global influence. At its heart is an understanding that we cannot choose between conventional defenses against state-based threats and the need to counter threats that do not recognize national borders.

Today we face both and we must respond to both. So over the course of this Parliament our priorities are to deter state-based threats to tackle terrorism to remain a world leader in cyber security and ensure we have the capability to respond rapidly to crises as they emerge.

And to meet these priorities we will continue to harness all the tools of national power available to us, coordinated through the National Security Council, to deliver a ‘full-spectrum approach’.

This includes support for our Armed Forces, counter-terrorism, international aid and diplomacy and working with our allies to deal with the common threats that face us all. Let me take each in turn.

**3. Match the adjectives from the text with their synonyms. Make word combinations using nouns from the text. Use these word combinations in the sentences (stories) of your own.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. global  2. direct  3. prosperous  4. remote  5. vital  6. fundamental  7. safe  8. major | a. important  b. essential  c. basic  d. secure  e. universal  f. distant  g. immediate  h. wealthy |

**4. Fill in the gaps with the word combinations from the box. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

|  |
| --- |
| Respond rapidly, to defeat the evil of ISIL, carried out the worst terrorist attacks, safeguard our prosperity, sets out a clear vision, to counter threats, to harness all the tools of national power, have been foiled by our security services, to deliver a ‘full-spectrum approach’ |

1. This morning I was in Paris with President Hollande discussing how we can work together … .

2. It has already taken the lives of British hostages and … against British people since 7/7 on the beaches of Tunisia to say nothing of the seven terrorist plots right here in Britain that … . over the past year.

3. So while every Government must choose how to spend the money it has available every penny of which is hard-earned by taxpayers this Government has taken a clear decision to invest in our security and … .

4. So the strategy which I am presenting to the House today … for a secure and prosperous United Kingdom, with global reach and global influence.

5. At its heart is an understanding that we cannot choose between conventional defenses against state-based threats and the need … that do not recognize national borders.

6**.** So over the course of this Parliament our priorities are to deter state-based threats to tackle terrorism to remain a world leader in cyber security and ensure we have the capability … to crises as they emerge.

7. And to meet these priorities we will continue … available to us, coordinated through the National Security Council, … .

**B**

**Armed Forces**

First, the bottom line of our National Security Strategy must always be the willingness and capability to use force where necessary.

On Friday evening the United Nations Security Council unanimously agreed Resolution 2249 calling on Member States to take “all the necessary measures” against ISIL in both Syria and Iraq.

Mr Speaker, I have said I will make the case for Britain to join our international allies in going after ISIL at their headquarters in Syria, not just Iraq.

And I will explain how such action would be one element of a comprehensive and long-term strategy to defeat ISIL, in parallel with a major international effort to bring an end to the war in Syria.

But today I want to set out how we will ensure that our Armed Forces have the capabilities to carry out such a task and indeed any other tasks that might be needed in the years ahead.

We will invest more than £178 billion in buying and maintaining equipment over the next decade including doubling our investment in equipment to support our Special Forces.

And we will increase the size of our deployable Armed Forces. In 2010 we committed to an expeditionary force of 30,000. Today I can tell the House that by 2025 we are increasing that number to 50,000.

And as part of this, we will create two new Strike Brigades, forces of up to 5,000 personnel fully equipped to deploy rapidly and sustain themselves in the field. We will establish two additional Typhoon squadrons and an additional squadron of F35 Lightning combat aircraft to operate from our new aircraft carriers.

We will maintain our ultimate insurance policy as a nation – our Continuous At Sea Nuclear Deterrent – and replace our four ballistic missile submarines.

We will buy nine new Maritime Patrol Aircraft, based in Scotland, to protect our nuclear deterrent, hunt down hostile submarines and enhance our maritime search and rescue.

And we will buy at least thirteen new frigates and two new offshore patrol vessels. These will include eight Type 26 anti-submarine warfare frigates. We will design and build a new class of light, flexible general purpose frigates.

These will be more affordable than the Type 26, which will allow us to buy more of them for the Royal Navy so that by the 2030s we can further increase the total number of Royal Navy frigates and destroyers.

Mr Speaker, not one of these capabilities is an optional extra. These investments are an act of clear-eyed self-interest to ensure our future prosperity and security.

**5. Match the English military terms with their Russian equivalents.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Headquarters  2. Nuclear deterrent  3. An ally  4. Lightening combat aircraft  5. Ballistic missile submarine  6. Maritime aircraft  7. Offshore patrol vessel  8. Maritime search and rescue  9. Royal Navy  10. Anti-submarine warfare frigate | a. cудно береговой охраны  b. морская авиация  c. подводный ракетоносец  d. поиск и спасение на море  e. штаб-квартира  f. союзник  g. ВМС Великобритании  h. противолодочный корабль  i. ядерные средства устрашения  j. реактивный боевой самолет |

**6. Complete the table with correct forms.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Noun** | **Adjective** | **Adverb** |
| capability |  |  |
|  |  | unanimously |
| willingness |  |  |
|  | comprehensive |  |
|  |  | rapidly |
|  | additional |  |
| security |  |  |
|  | ultimate |  |
|  | hostile |  |
|  | total |  |

**Text 4**

**Agencies Providing National Security in the UK**

**1. Skim the text. What security, intelligence and governmental agencies provide national security in the UK?**

The UK does not have a formal “national security council” but has a network of committees around the Prime Minister and cabinet ministers that serve this function. These committees are serviced by official staffs in the Cabinet Office and the Prime Minister’s Office. Given the absence of a written constitution in the United Kingdom, the legal basis for the various institutions and actors involved in national security strategy is precedent, authority from Parliament and civil service codes of conduct. National Security has never been defined in UK legislation. Instead, indications of an ‘accepted’ definition of national security may be extracted from a variety of published policy and strategy documents, legislation, Parliamentary Committee reports. The main threats to the country, broadly speaking, are terrorism, espionage, the impact of weak states on global stability, and the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (WMD). For the UK, the focus of national security is on the integration of prevention and contingency (planning) strategies involving all instruments at the Government’s disposal against threats, whether malicious or naturally-occurring, at the national and international levels. Structure Security decision-making is decentralized among different departments. Of key importance is the role of the Prime Minister (PM) and the Prime Minister’s Office (PMO), the Cabinet Office, the Foreign and Commonwealth Office (FCO), the Ministry of Defense (MoD), the Home Office (HO) and the Chancellor of the Exchequer. The Department for International Development (DFID) also plays a role in certain aspects of international security policy. These executive actors are brought together at the working level by a variety of inter-departmental ministerial and secretarial committees focusing on different aspects of national security policymaking. Senior ministers and civil servants come together in Cabinet Committees for decision making on issues that require strategic direction. The Cabinet Office is responsible for policy coordination, promoting standards, building capacity and managing the Cabinet itself. In this sense – and especially when considering national security issues – the Cabinet Office structures are the most like an NSC.

The intelligence community’s main elements report to separate government departments: the Secret Intelligence Service and Government Communications Headquarters (GCHQ) report to the FCO; the Security Service and the National Criminal Intelligence Service report to the Home Office; and the Defense Intelligence Staff report to the Ministry of Defense. Within the Cabinet Office, the Joint Intelligence Committee (JIC) provides agreed assessments to Ministers and departments; the Cabinet Office Assessments Staff, consisting of staff from various departments, is the heart of that analytic engine. Overseeing the JIC, the previously-separate roles of the JIC Chairman and the Intelligence Coordinator were combined in 2000 in order to promote centralization. In 2002, the new post of Security and intelligence Co-ordinator – who also serves as Permanent Secretary in the Cabinet. It is worth noting that, in the field, the UK military adopt a similar approach. In many military operations – particularly peace support operations – local commanders have considerable decision-making authority (which is not the case with the US military, for example). This, therefore, would appear to be a general British government policy, whether intentional or not, and one that permeates both civilian and military sectors. Office, and to whom the JIC Chairman, as Head of the Intelligence and Security Secretariat (ISS) in the Cabinet Office, reports – was created. Within the post-9/11 environment, the Joint Terrorism Analysis Centre (JTAC) was created in June 2003 as the UK’s centre for the analysis and assessment of international terrorism. It is a self-standing organisation comprised of representatives from eleven government departments and agencies. The Head of JTAC is responsible to the Director General of the Security Service. Oversight of the UK’s security sector is provided, in the first instance, by Ministerial Committees and the Cabinet. As noted above, the security agencies are responsible to their individual Ministers and, ultimately, to the Prime Minister. Parliamentary Committees provide legislative oversight through a system of Select Committees – such as on Defence or Foreign Affairs – which monitor the activities of individual departments and conduct regular enquiries into their activities. The Intelligence and Security Committee (ISC) is the primary parliamentary oversight body for the intelligence services; although not a Select Committee, the ISC does report to Parliament via (in the first instance) the Prime Minister. In addition to Parliamentary oversight, the National Audit Office (NAO), the UK’s supreme audit institution, undertakes regular audits of government departments through the House of Commons Public Accounts Committee. The NAO focuses upon value for money but also on broader issues of management and operational effectiveness. Since 1997, there has been an increasing tendency to set performance targets for government departments, including elements of the security sector, and to tie resourcing to quantitative performance targets.

Finally, a whole range of legislation passed between 1985 and 2000 created the system of authorization and accountability for the Agencies – including ensuring that national security in the UK conforms with the European Convention on Human Rights (ECHR) – while placing them on a statutory footing.

Emergency co-ordination. The Ministerial Committee on Civil Contingencies is the main body responsible for supporting, planning and co-ordinating response to disasters – whether malicious or naturally-occurring. Part of the Cabinet Office, it is chaired by the Home Secretary and reports to the Prime Minister. It is supported by the Cabinet Office Civil Contingencies Secretariat (CCS).

The Cabinet and Ministerial Committees co-ordinate policy and adjudicate policy differences. The Committees allow all the relevant policy actors to participate in the formulation and development of policy; as a result, many differences are ironed out before they reach the Cabinet for decision. Although there is not a single structure, there is effective centralized decision-making when needed, in a very flexible structure. Nonetheless, the creation of new, inter-departmental units in recent years – such as the CCS and JTAC – reflects a recognition of the need to improve pan-governmental co-ordination and implementation in the face of today’s threats to national security and stability.

**2. What component of national security has developed greatly for the last 40 years?**

**3. Write out in full the following abbreviations and translate them into Russian.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. PMO |  |
| 2. GCHQ |  |
| 3. JIC |  |
| 4. DFID |  |
| 5. ICS |  |
| 6. ECHR |  |
| 7. JTAC |  |
| 8. WMD |  |
| 9. NAO |  |
| 10. FCO |  |
| 11. MoD |  |
| 12. HO |  |

**4. Draw up a diagram that demonstrates the hierarchy of bodies providing national security in the UK.**

**5. Work in two teams. Describe powers and responsibilities of the bodies providing national security in the UK. Report to the class.**

**6. Match the types of national security with their definitions.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Political security | a) It is the condition of having stable income or other resources to support a [standard of living](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Standard_of_living) now and in the foreseeable future. |
| 2. Environmental security | b) It is the protection of [information systems](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Information_system) from theft or damage to the [hardware](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Computer_hardware), the [software](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Software), and to the [information](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Information) on them, as well as from [disruption](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Denial-of-service_attack) or [misdirection](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Botnet) of the services they provide. |
| 3. Military security | c) It concerns a support inventory [biotic](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Biotic_component) or [abiotic](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abiotic), [renewable](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Renewable_resources) or [expendable](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fossil_fuel), for sustaining life at a heightened level of well-being. |
| 4. Economic security | d) Itimplies the capability of a [nation-state](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nation-state) to defend itself, and/or deter military aggression. Alternatively, it implies the capability of a nation-state to enforce its policy choices by use of military force. |
| 5. Cyber-security | e) It is about the stability of the social order. Closely allied to military security and societal security, it specifically addresses threats to sovereignty. |
| 6. Security of energy and natural resources | f) It examines threats posed by environmental events and trends to individuals, communities or nations. |

|  |
| --- |
| **Grammar Revision** |

***to +*averb *(forget to learn)* and a verb + *-ing (recommend learning)* after a verb**

**1. Circle the correct alternatives below.**

*Example:* I *hорe tо hеаr / hearing* from you soon.

**1.** We spent the whole day *to prepare / preparing* for the party.

**2.** I'm looking forward *to meet / to meeting* you at the airport.

We use *to +* verb after some verbs but a verb + *-ing* after others. You have to learn which form follows each verb. Here are some verbs which intermediate learners often make mistakes with:

* **Use to** + **a** **verb after:** *ask (somebody), decide, forget, help (somebody), hope, invite, learn, need, plan, wait, want, would like*
* **Use a verb + -ing after:** *enjoy, fancy, finish, look forward to\*, recommend, spend, suggest, think about/of\**

\* **Note:** verbs with prepositions *(to, of, about* etc.) are always followed by verb + *-ing.* (In Exercise 1, Question 2 (*I'm* *looking forward to meeting you at the airport), to* is part of the verb.)

**2. Five of the sentences below contain mistakes. Two sentences are correct *(***√***).* Find and correct the mistakes.**

*to ask*

*Example:* I forgot ~~asking~~ you about your family. How are they?

1. I suggest meeting you at seven o'clock in front of the theatre.

2. I’m thinking of to buy a new desk and lamp.

3. I’ve already decided to buy something new for my bedroom.

4. If you want to coming, please let me know as soon as you can.

5. Last week I invited her going to the cinema.

6. We really enjoyed to be together.

7. I would like to learn dancing.

**3. Complete the sentences below by putting the verb in brackets into the correct form *(to +* verb or a verb + *-ing)* in each gap.**

*Example:*What things do you help your family *...to do...* (do) in the house?

1. What do you fancy ……… (do) next weekend?

2. How are you planning …….. (spend) your next holiday?

3. What programmes do you enjoy …….. (watch) on television?

4. What are you looking forward to …….. (do) in the future?

**4. Decide whether the verbs in bold can be changed into the Passive. Does the sentence sound better in the Passive or in the Active? Why?**

a. Criminals **carry out** most bank robberies not with a gun and a mask, but with a computer and a keyboard,

b. Security concerns **didn’t worry** our parents’ generation as much as they do us.

c. They **will** use more and more sophisticated technology to counter ID theft.

d. In fifty years’ time **we’ll be using** computer systems that are completely secure.

e. Always make certain that you **back up** computer files on a separate and removable computer drive.

f. In recent years travelling by air **has become** more dangerous.

g. Governments and others **have used** concerns over security to increase their control over the public.

h. Over the last few years governments **have been introducing** more and more serious security measures.

**5. Work in pairs. Do you agree or disagree with the statements above? Justify your viewpoint.**

**UNIT 2**

**National Security Strategy of the USA**

Lead-in

**1. What do you know about the US National Security Strategy?**

**2. In your opinion, does it differ from that of the UK and the RF?**

**Text 1**

**National Security of the USA**

**Vocabulary**

1. opportunities for America abound – у Америки много возможностей

2. strong and sustainable leadership – прочные и устойчивые лидирующие позиции

3. to defeat potential adversaries – уничтожить потенциальных противников

4. strengthening an unrivaled alliance system – укрепление нашей совершенной системы альянса союзнических отношений

5. underpinned by our enduring partnership – основанная на нашем долгосрочном партнерстве

6. to stop the progress of Iran’s nuclear program and rolled it back – прекратить действие Иранской ядерной программы и свернуть ее (программу)

7. to meet its international obligations – выполнять международные обязательства

8. to seeking new opportunities for partnership – находить новые возможности для партнерства

9. to spur greater agriculture – развивать сельское хозяйство

10. to take concerted action – предпринимать согласованные действия (усилия)

11. shortage of challenges – недостаток возможностей

12. The potential proliferation of weapons of mass destruction – возможное распространение оружия массового поражения

13. affiliated groups threaten U.S. citizens, interests, allies, and partners – связанные с ними группы угрожают американским гражданам, интересам, союзам и партнерам

14. Fragile and conflict-affected states incubate and spawn infectious disease, illicit weapons and drug smugglers - Уязвимые и подверженные конфликтам государства являются источником инфекционных заболеваний, незаконного оборота оружия, контрабанды наркотиков

15 to destabilize refugee flows – увеличивать потоки беженцев

**1. Read and translate the text.**

In a young century, opportunities for America abound, but risks to our security remain. This new *National Security Strategy* positions the United States to safeguard our national interests through strong and sustainable leadership. It sets out the principles and priorities to guide the use of American power and influence in the world. It advances a model of American leadership rooted in the foundation of America’s economic and technological strength and the values of the American people. It redoubles our commitment to allies and partners and welcomes the constructive contributions of responsible rising powers. It signals our resolve and readiness to deter and, if necessary, defeat potential adversaries. It affirms America’s leadership role within a rules-based international order that works best through empowered citizens, responsible states, and effective regional and international organizations. And it serves as a compass for how this Administration, in partnership with the Congress, will lead the world through a shifting security landscape toward a more durable peace and a new prosperity.

This strategy builds on the progress of the last 6 years, in which our active leadership has helped the world recover from a global economic crisis and respond to an array of emerging challenges. Our progress includes strengthening an unrivaled alliance system, underpinned by our enduring partnership with Europe, while investing in nascent multilateral forums like the G-20 and East Asia Summit. We brought most of our troops home after more than a decade of honorable service in two wars while adapting our counterterrorism strategy for an evolving terrorist threat. We led a multinational coalition to support the Afghan government to take responsibility for the security of their country, while supporting Afghanistan’s first peaceful, democratic transition of power. The United States led the international response to natural disasters, including the earthquake in Haiti, the earthquake and tsunami in Japan, and the typhoon in the Philippines to save lives, prevent greater damage, and support efforts to rebuild. We led international efforts to stop the proliferation of nuclear weapons, including by building an unprecedented international sanctions regime to hold Iran responsible for failing to meet its international obligations, while pursuing a diplomatic effort that has already stopped the progress of Iran’s nuclear program and rolled it back in key respects. We are rebalancing toward Asia and the Pacific while seeking new opportunities for partnership and investment in Africa and the Americas, where we have spurred greater agriculture and energy-related investments than ever before. And at home and abroad, we are taking concerted action to confront the dangers posed by climate change and to strengthen our energy security.

Still, there is no shortage of challenges that demand continued American leadership. The potential proliferation of weapons of mass destruction, particularly nuclear weapons, poses a grave risk. Even as we have decimated al-Qa’ida’s core leadership, more diffuse networks of al-Qa’ida, ISIL, and affiliated groups threaten U.S. citizens, interests, allies, and partners. Violent extremists exploit upheaval across the Middle East and North Africa. Fragile and conflict-affected states incubate and spawn infectious disease, illicit weapons and drug smugglers, and destabilizing refugee flows. Too often, failures in governance and endemic corruption hold back the potential of rising regions. The danger of disruptive and even destructive cyber-attack is growing, and the risk of another global economic slowdown remains. The international community’s ability to respond effectively to these and other risks is helped or hindered by the behaviors of major powers. Where progress has been most profound, it is due to the steadfastness of our allies and the cooperation of other emerging powers.

**2. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. abound | a. распространение ядерного оружия |
| 2. sustainable leadership | b. стихийное бедствие |
| 3. commitment | c. сворачивать (гонку вооружений) |
| 4. adversaries | d. опустошать, истреблять |
| 5. durable peace | e. противостоять угрозам |
| 6. an array of emerging challenges | f. распространенные сети |
| 7. natural disaster | g. эпидемический |
| 8. proliferation of nuclear weapons | h. длительный мир |
| 9. to roll back | i. враги |
| 10. to confront the dangers | j. быть в большом количестве |
| 11. to decimate | k. прочность, устойчивость |
| 12. diffuse networks | l. устойчивое лидерство |
| 13. upheaval | m. ряд (совокупность) возникающих проблем |
| 14. endemic | n. обязательство |
| 15. steadfastness | o. переворот |

**3. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. This new National Security Strategy positions the United States to ensure their national interest through strong sustainable leadership.

2. It redoubles their commitment to allies and partners and welcomes the constructive contributions of responsible rising powers.

3. Their progress excludes strengthening an unrivaled alliance system, underpinned by our enduring partnership with Europe, while investing in nascent multilateral forums like the G-20 and East Asia Summit.

4. They led national efforts to stop the proliferation of nuclear weapons, including by building an unprecedented international sanctions regime …

5. And at home they are taking concerted action to confront the dangers posed by climate change and strengthen our energy security.

**4. Work in pairs. Ask your partner not less than 6 questions. Answer your partner’s questions.**

**Text 2**

**National Security Strategy**

**1. Skim the text.**

We will lead with a long-term perspective.Around the world, there are historic transitions underway that will unfold over decades. This strategy positions America to influence their trajectories, seize the opportunities they create, and manage the risks they present. Five recent transitions, in particular, have significantly changed the security landscape, including since our last strategy in 2010.

First, power among states is more dynamic. The increasing use of the G-20 on global economic matters reflects an evolution in economic power, as does the rise of Asia, Latin America, and Africa. As the balance of economic power changes, so do expectations about influence over international affairs. Shifting power dynamics create both opportunities and risks for cooperation, as some states have been more willing than others to assume responsibilities commensurate with their greater economic capacity.

Second, power is shifting below and beyond the nation-state. Governments once able to operate with few checks and balances are increasingly expected to be more accountable to sub-state and non-state actors — from mayors of mega-cities and leaders in private industry to a more empowered civil society. They are also contending with citizens enabled by technology, youth as a majority in many societies, and a growing global middle class with higher expectations for governance and economic opportunity. While largely positive, these trends can foster violent non-state actors and foment instability — especially in fragile states where governance is weak or has broken down — or invite backlash by authoritarian regimes determined to preserve the power of the state.

Third, the increasing interdependence of the global economy and rapid pace of technological change are linking individuals, groups, and governments in unprecedented ways. This enables and incentivizes new forms of cooperation to establish dynamic security networks, expand international trade and investment, and transform global communications. It also creates shared vulnerabilities, as interconnected systems and sectors are susceptible to the threats of climate change, malicious cyber activity, pandemic diseases, and transnational terrorism and crime.

Fourth, a struggle for power is underway among and within many states of the Middle East and North Africa. This is a generational struggle in the aftermath of the 2003 Iraq war and 2011 Arab uprisings, which will redefine the region as well as relationships among communities and between citizens and their governments. This process will continue to be combustible, especially in societies where religious extremists take root, or rulers reject democratic reforms, exploit their economies, and crush civil society.

Fifth, the global energy market has changed dramatically. The United States is now the world’s largest natural gas and oil producer. Our dependence on foreign oil is at a 20-year low — and declining — and we are leading a new clean energy economy. While production in the Middle East and elsewhere remains vitally important for the global market, increased U.S. production is helping keep markets well-supplied and prices conducive to economic growth. On the other hand, energy security concerns have been exacerbated by European dependence on Russian natural gas and the willingness of Russia to use energy for political ends. At the same time, developing countries now consume more energy than developed ones, which is altering energy flows and changing consumer relationships.

Today’s strategic environment is fluid. Just as the United States helped shape the course of events in the last century, so must we influence their trajectory today by evolving the way we exercise American leadership. This strategy outlines priorities based on a realistic assessment of the risks to our enduring national interests and the opportunities for advancing them. This strategy eschews orienting our entire foreign policy around a single threat or region. It establishes instead a diversified and balanced set of priorities appropriate for the world’s leading global power with interests in every part of an increasingly interconnected world.

**2. Complete the sentences according to the text.**

1. Five recent transitions, in particular, have significantly changed the security landscape, …

2. As the balance of economic power changes, …

3. The increasing interdependence of the global economy and rapid pace of technological change …

4. In particular, India’s potential, China’s rise, and Russia’s aggression …

5. A struggle for power is underway …

6. This strategy eschews orienting our entire …

**3. Make a plan. Retell the text according to the plan.**

**4. Write an essay on the main aspects of the US National Security Strategy (10-12 sentences).**

**Text 3**

**1. Work in 3 groups. Read Parts I, II, III.**

**2. Each group describes powers and responsibilities of the bodies ensuring national security in the USA**.

**Part I**. The US National Security Council (NSC) was established in 1947 to co-ordinate responses to threats to national security. Today, the main threats include the development and proliferation of WMD; the threat to peace from terrorism; the use of missiles against the US; and natural disasters. The NSC co-ordinates national security policy and advises the President, although it does not have an implementation role. Structure The NSC was created as part of the National Security Act of 1947 as an integral part of the national security decision-making system. Specifically, its role is to manage and co-ordinate foreign and defense policies, and to reconcile diplomatic and military commitments and requirements. It is a forum in which new policies are initiated and shaped – it seeks to ensure that the President has adequate information on which to make his decisions and that policies, once decided upon, are implemented. Located in the Office of the President, the NSC is under the chairmanship of the President; its statutory members include the Secretaries of State, Defense, and the Treasury, the Vice-President, the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs (also known as the National Security Advisor), the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, the Director of Central Intelligence, and the Secretaries of State and Defense.

The Secretary of State has primary responsibility for foreign policy and the Secretary of Defense oversees decision-making in relation to US defense policy; the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff acts as military advisor to the Council, while the Director of Central Intelligence is its intelligence advisor. Other individuals – such as the President’s Chief of Staff – participate on an ad hoc basis. The National Security Advisor plays two roles in the decision-making process: both as the President’s adviser on national security matters and as the senior government official responsible for managing senior-level discussions of national security issues. In these tasks, the Advisor is supported by the NSC staff, comprised of civil servants lent out by other agencies, political appointees, and other personnel. The NSC structure ensures that most issues are regulated at lower levels of the bureaucracy and that only those issues that require Presidential attention on decision-making reach the President himself. Each President has set up his own structure for national security decision-making, which reflected his own management style and interests. Many Presidents have initially sought to reduce the size of the NSC and the staff. But most concluded that they needed a sizeable NSC staff to coordinate policy. While the exact role of the NSC has largely depended on the President in office, there are certain features that remain consistent. For instance, the NSC exists to advise the President on the integration of domestic, foreign and military policies relating to national security. It also serves as a forum for discussion for the President, advisers and cabinet officials; and from which to coordinate executive departments and agencies in policy development and implementation. More recently, the NSC has been responsible for restructuring governmental bodies involved in national security, including setting up new homeland security structures and reforming the intelligence services. There are three discernible levels at which national security policy is considered within the NSC. First, that of the Principals Committee, the most senior interagency forum; second, the Deputies Committee, which is a senior sub-Cabinet interagency forum which prescribes and reviews the work of interagency groups, while ensuring that NSC issues have been properly analyzed and prepared for discussion; and, finally, policy co-ordination committees which represent a day-today forum for interagency co-ordination of national security policy while providing policy analysis for the senior committees.

**Part II.** The NSC Subcommittee on National Security, Emerging Threats and International Relations is one of the most active subcommittees. It focuses on terrorism and has now assumed oversight responsibility for the Department of Homeland Security (DHS). Since then, the structure of the NSC has been replicated in the creation of the Homeland Security Council and the White House Office of Homeland Security. Like the NSC, the Office of Homeland Security has three layers (Principals Committee, Deputies Committee, and Policy Coordination Committees with responsibilities for specific areas).

The main difference is that while the NSC has statutory responsibility for co-ordinating national security issues, the Homeland Security Council lacks this. Its role is, therefore, to improve efficiency and information-sharing on this crucial family of national security issues, and to advise the President on those issues. Thus, to overcome clashes, the Office of Homeland Security serves, in part, as a mechanism to co-ordinate the activities of the DHS, the DoD and the State Department. As DHS was being stood-up and the various agencies that now comprise it merged under its umbrella, this role was particularly important. The intent was that once DHS was stood up, the Office and Council would retain a crucial role in co-ordinating its work with that of other agencies and in continuing to advise the President.

The US Congress has oversight of national security issues. The Subcommittee on National Security, Emerging Threats and International Relations has now assumed oversight responsibility for the newly-created Department of Homeland Security (DHS). The Government Accountability Office (GAO) supports Congress in overseeing federal programs and operations to ensure accountability to the American people.

The Deputy National security advisor is responsible for crisis management on the part of the NSC. Since the establishment of DHS, its Directorate of Emergency Preparedness and Response (EP&R) is responsible for overseeing domestic disaster preparedness training and co-ordinating government disaster relief. It is responsible for co-ordinating first-line responders, and overseeing the federal government's national response and recovery strategy. To achieve this, DHS is consolidating: • the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), which has a long and solid track record of supporting communities after natural disasters and emergency situations; • the Strategic National Stockpile and the National Disaster Medical System (of the Department of Health and Human Services); • the Department of Energy’s Nuclear Incident Response Team; • the Department of Justice’s Domestic Emergency Support Teams; and • the FBI’s National Domestic Preparedness office under EP&R authority.

**Part III.** The United States enjoys a vibrant ‘think tank’ community comprising thousands of highly trained and experienced professionals (from academia, government, and elsewhere), engaged in discussions on national security issues. While some groups represent particular political leanings, others are independent.

The NSC is stipulated as a statutory body in US legislation, and is sanctioned by an Act of Congress. Such legislative safeguards support the NSC role as the advisory body to the President and the co-ordinating body for national security policy as a whole. Nonetheless, it is important to remember that principle NSC staff is appointed by the President – this is not an independent institution. Staff members are a mix of government personnel (civil service, military, foreign service) with political appointees in the most senior roles. As the NSC staff is comprised differently under various national security advisors, the staff may be selected and run to favor independence, loyalty, or some combination of the two, based on the desire of the President and National Security Advisor at that time. Indeed, the functioning of the NSC changes with each new President and fluctuates depending on interpersonal relationships between the President, his principal advisers and department heads. It is worth noting that – over the last few years – many of the previous efforts of various US Government entities have started to come together to formalize the US’s role in providing SSR and related activities to countries overseas emerging from conflict. This was recently formalized with the establishment of the Office of the Coordinator for Reconstruction and Stabilization in the Department of State. A variety of federal departments and agencies – such as State, DoD, the US Agency for International Development (USAID), Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), Department of the Treasury (DoTr), Department of Justice (DoJ), and the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) – will provide personnel with which to staff the office.

**3. Title the text.**

**4. Match the abbreviations with their full forms.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. FEMA | a) Directorate of Emergency Preparedness and Response |
| 2. DHS | b) The US Agency for International Development |
| 3. DoTr | c) Central Intelligence Agency |
| 4. NSC | d) Department of the Treasury |
| 5. USAID | e) The Department of Homeland Security |
| 6. EP&R | f) The Federal Emergency Management Agency |
| 7. CIA | g) Department of Justice |
| 8. DoJ | h) The US National Security Council |

**5. Draw up a table to speak about the bodies providing national security in the RF, the UK, the USA.**

**6. Practically every new elected leader initiates his/her approach to the National Security Strategy. Using the Internet resources identify differences between present strategies and previous ones of the RF, the UK and the USA (10-15 sentences). Report to the class.**

|  |
| --- |
| Grammar revision |

Easily confused words. Phrasal **verbs**

|  |
| --- |
| There are several reasons why words can be easily confused in English.  Work in pairs. Can you think of words in these four categories that you have difficulty with?   * words which are the same or similar in your language, but which have a different meaning in English (e.g. agenda) * words with slightly different meanings (e.g. opportunity/possibility)words with the same sound but a different spelling and meaning (e.g. saw/sore) * phrasal verbs (e.g. put up) * spelling mistakes (e.g. misspell misspell) |

**1. Choose the correct word in these sentences.**

a. I’m always very excited/nervous when I get on a plane, because I’m worried that something might happen.

b. There were long queues at the check-in desk, but the officials

checked/controlled/inspected things very well.

c. The police monitored the actions/activities of the suspects twenty-four hours a day.

d. Cities rely on surveillance/surveys to maintain security, but at the same time try to avoid/prevent limiting people’s personal/personnel freedom.

e. The IT department have tried to stop hackers/hijackers on a number of events/occasions, but actually I currently there is no 100% effective/efficient system available - although maybe there will be in the future.

2. Read the story False alarm leads to tube shutdown.

- What was the misunderstanding that led to the emergency?

**False Alarm Leads to Tube Shutdown**

Public-spirited pensioner George Wilkes set off a major security alert yesterday on the London Underground. George was suspicious when two men with rucksacks got on at Piccadilly Circus and sat next to him, talking in hushed tones.

At one point he heard one of them say, ‘But I don’t want to be a terrorist’. The other replied, ‘Nor do I, so the only answer is to hijack.’ This was enough for an increasingly nervous George. He got off at the next station and reported what he had heard to the station attendant.

In a very efficient operation, the two men were picked up on a video surveillance camera as they got off the train a few stops down the line and were immediately arrested. The whole area was closed off. The men were told to take off their rucksacks and turn out the contents. When the police inspected them, they found only jumpers, bottles of water, and personal stereos.

It turned out that the two students were about to set off on a trip around Europe and had actually been discussing how they didn’t want to be tourists, but travellers, and as they had very little money they would need to hitch-hike.

An embarrassed George later apologized for his over-zealous actions. ‘I’m getting on a bit nowadays, and my hearing isn’t as good as it used to be. My wife gave me a good telling-off, I can tell you!’ But officials said that events like this, though inconvenient, showed that the public were being vigilant.

**3. Choose the correct nouns in these sentences.**

a. Several bystanders/standersby were hurt when the bomb **exploded**.

b. This new anti-virus software represents a breakthrough/throughbreak in IT security and will **reduce** online corporate fraud.

c. The airport had to increase security whilst also trying to **manage with** government backcuts/cutbacks.

d. He **blamed** his life of crime on his bringingup/upbringing.

**4. Change these sentences using a noun derived from the phrasal verb in** **italics.** You may need to make other changes to the sentence.

a. There have been a number of houses which have been broken into in our street in recent weeks, but the police have refused to **investigate** them.

b. I’m sorry we **arrived** so late. The traffic was held up because of a security alert.

c. Several people who were passing by just ignored the victim’s cries for help and **continued** as if nothing was happening.

d. The crime was very well-planned and the gang thought they had escaped **capture for** it, but after the police had been tipped off, they were arrested in a series of dawn raids.

**5. While reading the story pay attention to all the characters, events and time. This will help you to solve the case.**

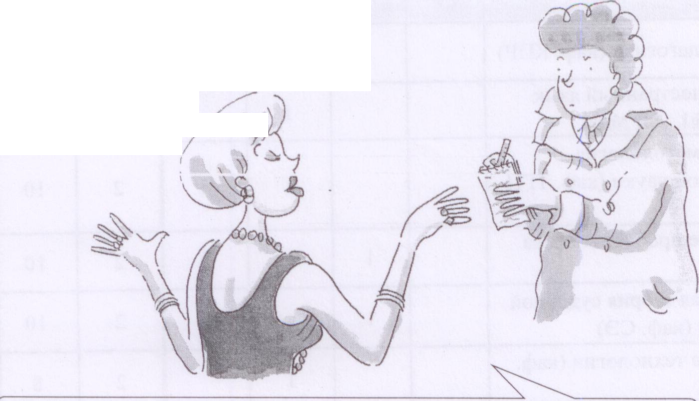
|  |
| --- |
| **Tense Revision**  **Part I** |

**1. Read this Part. Choose the correct form of the verb.**

****

TREVOR STERN was not a popular man, in spite of his wealth. He (1) *lived* (live) in a large house about a mile outside the village of Prenton. When he (2) *was found*, (find) dead in his study, no one (3) *cried* (cry), not even his only daughter. It was soon clear that he (4) ……… (murder).

Detective Inspector Blackledge took statements from his widow, Dorothy, his seventeen-year-old daughter, Lucy, his business partner, Gerald Brook, and his doctor.



I (5) ……… (not/love) my husband, he was a cold and selfish man. But I (6) ……….. (not/murder) him, either. After dinner last night he said he (7) …….. (want) to check some business papers in his study. He (8) ……… (have) a meeting with Gerald, his business partner, the next morning. He (9) ………. (ask) for some tea. That was about 9 o'clock. I (10) ………. (watch) a rather exciting film on television, so I (11) ………. (tell) Lucy to take it to him. At quarter past nine Doctor Emerson (12) ………. (call). I (13) ………. (notice) the time because we (14) ……… (expect) him to come earlier. I (15) ……… (answer) the front door bell. Trevor (16) ……… (still/shout) in his study. He and Lucy (17) ………. (obviously/have) a serious row. So I (18) ………. (take) the doctor into the sitting-room for a moment. Then Trevor stopped (19) ………. (shout). I guessed Lucy (20) ………. (go) out by the back door. Doctor Emerson went to the study. I think he wanted to persuade Trevor (21) ……… (go) to the hospital for some tests, but Trevor (22) ……… (not/want) to go. I (23) ……… (hear) him shouting again several times over the next twenty minutes. He called him an ignorant country doctor, and later he said something like ‘There's nothing you can do!’ I think Lucy (24) ……… (come) into the house while the doctor (25) ……… (still/talk) to Trevor. (26) ……… (hear) the front door bang during a quiet few seconds when Trevor (27) …….. (not/shout). I was tired and fed up and went to my bedroom soon after that. My sister (28) ……… (phone) and we (29) ………. (talk) for ages. I (30) ………. (tell) her I (31) ……… (decide) to leave Trevor.

**Part II**

**2. Fill in the gaps with appropriate tense forms and explain your choice.**

**3. Write down the sequence of the events.**



Mum (32) …….. (watch) some stupid film after dinner, so she made me (33) ……..(take) Dad’s tea into his study. It was about nine o'clock. He was in a really mean mood. He shouted at me because I (34) …….. (spill) a few drops of tea on his desk while I (35) ……… (pour) it. I (36) …….. (not/want) to watch the film so I (37) ……… (creep) out by the back door. I (38) …….. (decide) to go down to the village and use the public phone to call Alan. He's my boyfriend. I (39) ……… (never/like) Mum or Dad to be around when I (40) ……… (talk) to him. Especially yesterday, because Dad and I (41) ……… (have) a stupid argument about Alan the day before. It (42) ……… (normally/take) quarter of an hour to walk to the village. Perhaps it (43) …….. (take) less time last night. I can't prove I (44) ………. (go) to the village. No one (45) …... (see) me when I (46) ….. (walk) into the village. I (47) ….. (see) Gerald, that's Dad's business partner. He (48) ……. (stand) near the window in his sitting-room. He (49) …….. (not/see) me, though, because it was dark outside. He (50) …….. (talk) on the phone, I think.

Alan (51) ……. (not/answer) the phone. Then I (52) …….. (remember) he (53) …… (tell) me he (54) ……… (play) in a concert that evening. So I (55) ……. (walk) home again. I (56) …… (meet) Gerald just before I (57) ……. (reach) our house. He (58) …… (look) for his dog. That was about twenty to ten. I came in by the back door as quietly as possible and went to bed. I didn’t want to see my parents again that evening.

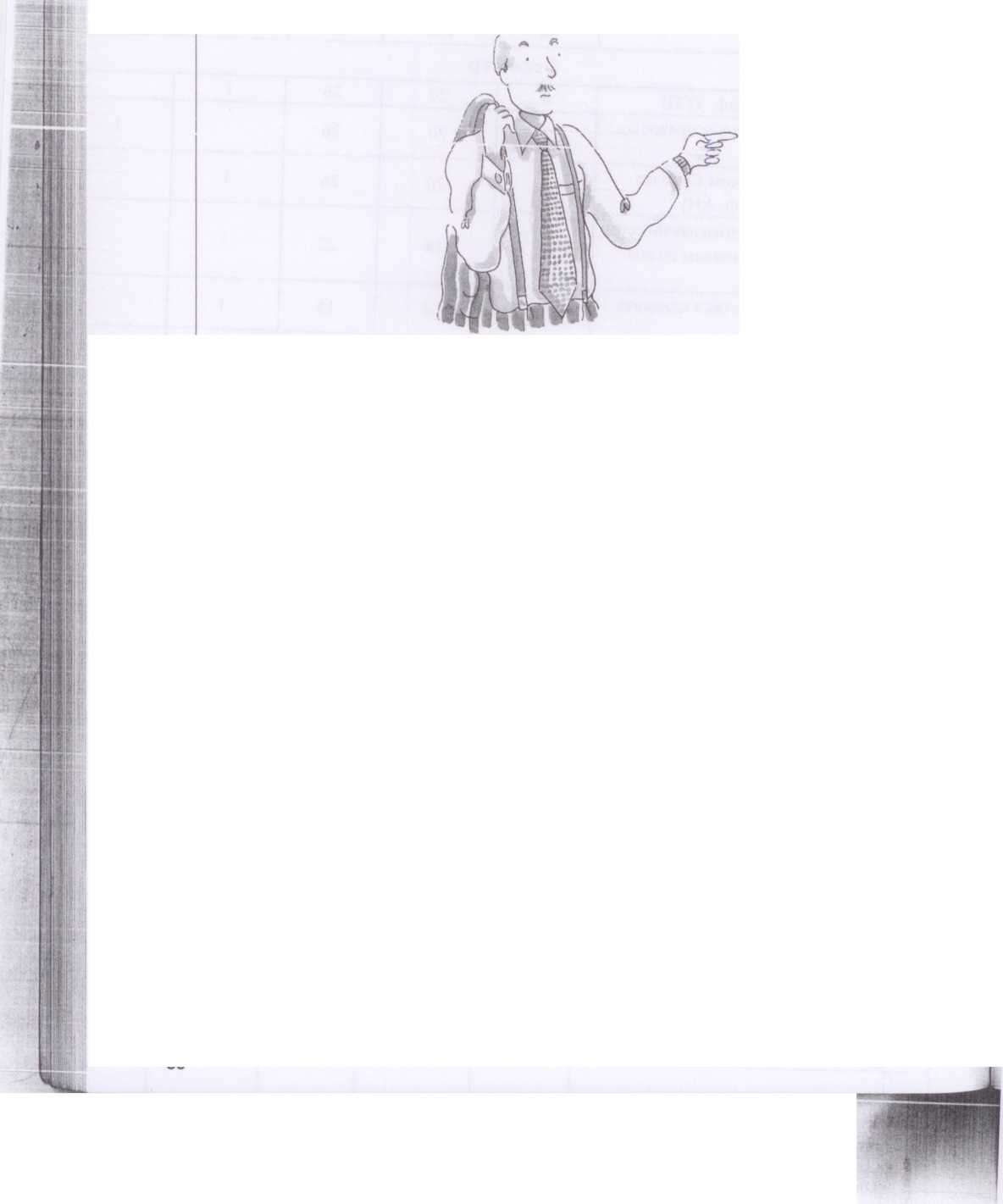


I (59) …….. (call) at the Stems' house at nine-fifteen. I (60) ……… (be) rather later than I (61) …….. (plan) to be because I (62) ………. (visit) another patient. When Mrs Stern (63) …….. (let) me into the house she (64) ………. (seem) rather embarrassed and (65) …….. (show) me into the sitting-room. I could hear Trevor Stern (66) ……… (shout) at someone in his study. Mrs Stern said something about teenage girls and that they (67) ……… (have) problems with Lucy. Well, the shouting (68) ……… (stop) almost immediately, so (69) ………. (go) to his study. Lucy (70) ………. (already/leave) the room before I (71) ………. (get) there. I tried (72) ………. (explain) to Trevor why he needed (73) ………. (have) these hospital tests, but he (74) ………. (not/let) me. He said I (75) ………. (be) an ignorant country doctor who (76) ………. (not/know) what he (77) ………. (talk) about. I (78) ………. (realise) it was no use (79) ……… (argue) with him so I (80) ……… (leave) after only a few minutes. I was quite angry actually. I let myself out of the house without (81) ……… (see) Lucy or Mrs Stern.

Part III

4. Choose the correct tense forms for the verbs in the parenthesis (to fit each situation).

5. What key words and collocations can help you to solve the case?

Yes, Trevor was my business partner. We (82) ………. (not/be) really friends. Yes, my house (83)……….. (be) just round the corner from the Sterns'. I (84) ……….. (live) here for two years now. I (85) ……….. (have) a little cottage in the village. But I (86) ………. (buy) this house when I started (87)……….. (earn) a lot of money.

I can't really tell you very much about the night Trevor died. I took my dog for a long walk that evening. I (88) ………. (go) up on the hills, away from the village. Then the stupid dog (89) ………. (go) after a rabbit or something and I (90) ……….. (lose) him in the dark. I (91) ……….. (look) for him when I (92) ………. (meet) Lucy, as a matter of fact. She (93) ………. (walk) up the road towards their house. She (94) ……….. (seem) rather upset. I asked her if she (95) ……….. (see) the dog, but she said she (96) ……….. (not/had). She (97) ……….. into her house and I (98) ……….. (find) him a few minutes afterwards. I was back home by just after quarter to ten.

Detective Inspector Blackledge showed the statements to her colleague, Sergeant Ross.

blackledge: Well, Ross. What do you think? Who killed Stern?

ross: I don't know. It (99) ………. (not/be) his wife. She (100) ……… (not/even/go) into the study.

blackledge: But she admits she didn’t love him. Do you think she’s in love with the doctor?

ross: It's possible. And perhaps Trevor Stern (101) ……… (find out). But we know the doctor was at the hospital by ten o'clock that night. And that's at least half an hour from the Sterns' house.

blackledge: But that (102) ………. (mean) he (103) ……… (leave) the Sterns’ house before half past nine.

ross: Exactly!

blackledge: Anyway, Dorothy Stern told her sister she (104) ………. (leave) her husband. She didn’t need (105) ………. (murder) him.

ross: But what about Lucy?

blackledge: Yes, there’s something about Lucy’s story which doesn’t quite fit. Let’s see, what did Gerald Brook say?

ross: That's it! Lucy (106) ………… (not/walk) to the village and back, if he (107) ………. (meet) her at twenty to ten. She (108) ………. (still/shout at) by her father at nine-fifteen.

blackledge: But look at all the statements. The times don’t fit.

ross: Neither do the facts. Someone (109) ………. (tell) lies.

blackledge: I think it’s time we (110) ………. (make) an arrest.

Who did they arrest?

**6. Write the last part of the detective story using the key words (10-15 sentences) from task 5.**

**Giving talks and presentations**

Alan Fraine is giving a presentation about HydroGen at a conference on clean energy.

**Match the underlined phrases in the talk with phrases from the box with a similar meaning.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Introducing the topic**  a ... the purpose of my presentation this morning is to ….  b … My presentation will be …  **Referring to questions**  с ... please feel free to ask any questions you may have.  **Introducing each section**  d First of all, I want to take a brief look at ...  e Now, let’s begin with ... | **Referring backwards and forwards**  f ..., as I mentioned previously, …  g …we’ll come back to this point later.  **Referring to visual information**  h As you can see from this first chart ...  **Referring to common knowledge**  i ..., as you are aware, ...  **Concluding**  j ... that concludes my presentation. |

**Section1**

Alan

Good morning, everyone, and thank you for your interest in

HydroGen. Now, the aim of my talk today is to1 \_\_\_a\_\_\_ explain the company’s mission as we move into a new phase of development. I’ve divided my talk into2 \_\_\_\_\_ three sections.

First. I’d like to give you an overview of 3 \_\_\_\_\_\_ the company’s origins. Then I’ll move on to our development into consultancy on water resources in North America. Finally, we’ll focus on our new stage of development with partners around the world.

So, let’s start with 4\_\_\_\_\_\_ the company’s early days. HydroGen was founded back in 1936 ...

**Section 2**

Alan

During the last ten years, we have widened our attention to many areas of water resource management and, as I mentioned earlier,5 \_\_\_\_\_ this development has taken the form of a consultancy business. It has met a big demand because, as you know.6 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the need for clean, reliable water and energy supplies is large and growing. This is true both here in the States and Canada and, of course, globally. And I’ll say more about this later.7\_\_\_\_\_\_

Now let’s turn to some facts and figures. If you look at the first chart.8 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ we now provide a wide range of technical support.

And, ...

**Section3**

Alan

- ... and, with our highly-experienced French, Norwegian, and Turkish partners, our project in central Turkey is now progressing well, and we expect to complete in two years.

Well, that brings me to the end of mv talk.9 \_\_\_\_\_\_ Now, I know

that there are many areas which I have not discussed in detail, so if you have any questions, I’d be pleased to answer them.10 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Role- play**

International forum on “Ways of ensuring and maintaining international security”. Delegations from the RF, the UK, the US, Germany, France take part in the forum. Each delegation comprises a head, representatives responsible for any area of national security y, journalists. Heads of delegations introduce the members of the delegations and deliver reports. Representatives of delegations speak about main ways of ensuring national security in their countries. They also answer the journalist’s questions. As a result a final communiqué shall be worked out. It must contain the main ways of ensuring national security in the world. The chairman conducts the forum. While preparing for the role play students use previously studied material and find information on ensuring national security of Germany and France. They also prepare questions.

## Communiqué

## Definition of communiqué for English Language Learners

* :an official announcement about a usually very important piece of news

###### **Synonyms**

[ad](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/ad), [advert](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/advert), [advertisement](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/advertisement), [bulletin](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/bulletin), [announcement](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/announcement), [notice](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/notice), [notification](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/notification), [posting](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/posting), [release](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/release)

**How to write Communique**

**How to write Communique**

An official announcement especially to the press refers to a communique. It is also called an official press-release. When organization or government or committees want to publicize their decisions, they publish or release official announcement. Similarly, two or more that two organizations or government publicize their decisions or special bi-lateral or joint issue in the form of the communique.

**What are the components or parts of a Communique**

Communique especially consists of two components. They are introduction, body and signature. So, let’s discuss these components.

**Introduction of the communique**

It is the introductory part of a communique. It involves the information about the organization or authorities who publish the communique, the organization or authorities who publish the communique, the purpose of the communique and the time. It generally introduces the communique.

**Signature of the communique**

It is done for the authority and formality of the communique. It is placed at the last of it. The authority or authorities should keep the signatures to maintain legality and formality of the communique.

**Test yourself**

Test 5

**Task I. Give Russian equivalents to the following English word combinations.**

1. to establish national interests

2. changing environment

3. to strive to maintain the dominant positions in the world

4. to escalate conflicts

5. aimed at undermining the unity and territorial integrity

**Task II. Give English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. предусматривать внешнеполитическое давление

2. обеспечить взаимовыгодное партнерство

3. ускоренное развитие

4. региональная нестабильность

5. нарушение международно-правовых норм

**Task III. Match the types of national security with their definitions.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Cyber security | a) It depends on the rule of [international law](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_law) (including the [laws of war](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law_of_war)), the effectiveness of [international political institutions](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_institutions), as well as [diplomacy](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diplomacy) and [negotiation](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Negotiation) between nations and other security actors. |
| 2. Environmental security | b) It is, in the context of [international relations](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_relations), the ability of a [nation state](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nation-state) to maintain and develop the national economy, without which other dimensions of national security cannot be managed. |
| 3. Military security | c) It is refers to the integrity of [ecosystems](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ecosystem) and the [biosphere](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Biosphere), particularly in relation to their capacity to sustain a [diversity of life-forms](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Biodiversity) (including human life). |
| 4. Economic security | d) It is often understood as the capacity of a nation to mobilize military forces to guarantee its borders and to deter or successfully defend against physical threats including [military aggression](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Offensive_(military)) and attacks by [non-state actors](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Violent_non-state_actor), such as [terrorism](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Terrorism). |
| 5. Political security | e) It deals with resources including water, sources of energy, land and minerals. Availability of adequate natural resources is important for a nation to develop its industry and economic power. |
| 6. Security of energy and natural resources | f) It concerns the protection of hardware, software, data, people, and also the procedures by which systems are accessed, and the field has growing importance due to the increasing reliance on computer systems in most societies. |

**Task IV. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word combinations.**

|  |
| --- |
| Developing cooperation, extending international cooperation, improving legal regulation of the prevention of crime, strengthening the role of the state, increasing citizens’ level of trust, ensuring state and public security, increasing the efficacy of protection for the rights and legal interests |

The main areas of focus for \_\_\_1\_\_\_ (обеспечения государственной и общественной безопасности) are \_\_2\_\_\_ (усиление роли государства) as a guarantor of security of the person and property rights; \_\_\_3\_\_\_ (совершенствование правового регулирования предупреждения преступности) (including in the information sphere), corruption, terrorism and extremism, the distribution of narcotics, and the fight against such phenomena; \_\_\_4\_\_\_ (развитие взаимодействия) between civil society and organs ensuring state security and public order; \_\_\_5\_\_\_ (повышение доверия граждан) in the Russian Federation’s law enforcement and judicial systems; \_\_\_6\_\_\_ (эффективности защиты прав и законных интересов) of Russian citizens abroad; and \_\_\_7\_\_\_\_ (расширение международного сотрудничества)in the area of state and public security.

**Task V. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate prepositions from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| Of (5), at (2), according to (2), in (2), on (2), within (1), against (2), to (5), until (1) |

\_\_1\_\_ May15, 2017 Russian President Vladimir Putin signed a decree \_\_2\_\_ approving the country’s economic security strategy \_\_3\_\_ 2030.

"The strategy is aimed \_\_4\_\_ ensuring counteraction \_\_\_5\_\_ challenges and threats \_\_\_6\_\_\_economic security, preventing crises \_\_7\_\_resource-based, production, science and technical and financial areas and also non-admission \_\_8\_\_ reducing living standards of citizens," says the document posted \_\_9\_\_ the official portal \_\_10\_\_ legal information.

\_\_11\_\_ the document, the Russian government has to develop measures aimed \_\_12\_\_ implementing the strategy \_\_13\_\_ three months.

Discriminatory measures \_\_14\_\_ the key sectors \_\_15\_\_ the Russian economy are one \_\_16\_\_ the main threats \_\_17\_\_ the country’s economic security, \_\_18\_\_ the economic security strategy.

The document names "discriminatory measures \_\_19\_\_ the key sectors \_\_20\_\_ the Russian economy, restricted access \_\_21\_\_ international financial resources and up-to-date technologies" as challenges and threats \_\_22\_\_ the country’s economic security.

**Task VI. Complete the sentences with the appropriate final parts from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| Continue to harness all the tools of national power; the size of the Royal Navy’s frigate fleet; course of events will take over the next five years; our economic security; support fragile and broken states and regions to prevent conflict; needed to bring down our deficit; terrorism, espionage and others; when the threats to our country are growing |

1. Our national security depends on …

2. We have taken difficult decisions …

3. This is vital at a time …

4. To meet these priorities we’ll …

5. In the long term we’ll also increase …

6. This includes refocusing our budget to …

7. We have no way of knowing precisely what …

8. The main threats to the country, broadly speaking are …

**Task VII. Match the words with their definitions.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Infringement | a. freedom from danger or risk of injury |
| 2. Security | b.the aim or object towards which an endeavor is directed |
| 3. To exercise | c. to make ineffective or restrain or neutralize the usually ill effects of by means of an opposite force, action, or influence |
| 4. Goal | d. to do better than (another) in a competition or battle; win victory over; beat |
| 5. To counteract | e. a violation, as of a law, regulation, or agreement. |
| 6. Safety | f. a declaration of intention to inflict harm, pain |
| 7. To strengthen | g. to make certain or sure; guarantee |
| 8. Threat | h. to use something |
| 9. To ensure | i. to make strong or increase the strength of |
| 10. To defeat | j. measures adopted by a government to prevent espionage, sabotage, or attack |

**Be ready to answer these questions**

1. What is national security?

2. Why is consolidating Russia’s position as one of the leading world powers so important for the state?

3. Why are conflicts escalating?

4. Why is it necessary to update national security strategy?

5. Identify the main threats to national security of the RF?

6. What agencies provide national security in the RF?

7. What are the priorities of the Federal Security Service?

8. What is the role of nuclear deterrence in ensuring national security in the

Russian Federation?

9. What are the main threats to national security of the RF in the cultural sphere?

10. What are the threats to national security in the sphere of national health and health care in the RF?

11. What are the vital threats to the UK?

12. What does the UK government do to the UK’s prosperity?

13. What steps must the UK’s government take to ensure National Security and Strategic Defense?

14. What agencies provide national security in the UK?

15. What are the priorities of National Security Strategy in the USA?

16. What special agencies provide national security in the USA?

**VOCABULARY**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| security | безопасность |
| safety | защищенность |
| military might | военная мощь |
| threat | угроза |
| to preserve physical integrity | сохранять личную неприкосновенность |
| to maintain economic relations | поддерживать экономические отношения |
| disruption | разрушение, подрыв |
| to control domestic and foreign conditions | контролировать внутренние и внешние условия |
| self-determination | самоопределение |
| autonomy | автономия |
| to establish priorities | установить приоритеты |
| to strengthen national security | укреплять национальную безопасность |
| to ensure development | обеспечить развитие |
| to update | обновлять |
| changing environment | изменяющаяся обстановка |
| to initiate counteraction | предпринимать меры противодействия |
| to pursue a policy of constrain | проводить политику сдерживания |
| to envisage exerting pressure | предусматривать оказание давления |
| consolidating the status | укрепление положения |
| ensuring stability | обеспечение стабильности |
| mutually beneficial partnership | взаимовыгодное партнерство |
| the country’s defenses | силы обороны страны |
| sovereignty | суверенность |
| improving economic competitiveness | повышение экономической конкурентоспособности |
| to escalate conflicts | обострять конфликт |
| the international relationship | международные отношения |
| offensive weapons | наступательные виды оружия |
| resolving international problems | разрешение международных вопросов |
| instigation of “color revolution” | подстрекательство к совершению “цветных революций ” |
| undermining the unity and integrity | подрыв единства и целостности |
| to overthrow legitimate political authorities | свержение законных политических режимов |
| nuclear weapons | ядерное оружие |
| to confront a policy of constrain | противостоять политике сдерживания |
| the prevention of threats of national security | предотвращение угроз национальной безопасности |
| disruption of functioning of state bodies | нарушение работы государственных органов |
| destruction | разрушение |
| act of intimidation | акция устрашения |
| to destroy the unity and territorial integrity | уничтожить единство и территориальную целостность |
| illegal trafficking | контрабанда |
| an emissary | агент, шпион |
| to exert | оказывать давление, влияние |
| nuclear deterrence | средство ядерного сдерживания |
| to accomplish | совершать, выполнять |
| to preserve stability | сохранять стабильность |
| enmity | вражда, враждебность |
| widespread proliferation of weapons | широкомасштабное распространение вооружений |
| unlawful infringements | незаконные нарушения |
| to counteract threats | противодействовать угрозам |
| drug addiction | наркотическая зависимость |
| to set tasks | определить задачи |
| military counterintelligence | военная контрразведка |
| cessation of hostilities | прекращение боевых действий |
| settlement process | процесс урегулирования |
| resolute combat | решительная борьба |
| to observe the ceasefire | соблюдать режим прекращения огня |
| information on confidential activity | сведения о закрытой деятельности |
| state armament programme | госпрограмма вооружения |
| a swindler | жулик |
| to tighten monitoring of the refugee flows | усилить контроль над потоками беженцев |
| counterintelligence services | органы контрразведки |
| to prevent activity | пресечь деятельность |
| a successor | преемник |
| assassination | захват террористов |
| extraordinary rendition | экстрадиция |
| intelligence-gathering | сбор разведывательной информации |
| to underpin security | укрепить безопасность |
| to bring down | снизить, сократить |
| total black holes in the budget | дефицит бюджета |
| to meet the NATO targets | выполнять обязательства перед НАТО |
| to harness | использовать |
| to deliver “a full-spectrum approach” | демонстрировать всесторонний подход |
| squadrons | зд. эскадрильи |
| nuclear deterrent | ядерный щит |
| to hunt down | выслеживать |
| to deploy | развертывать (военные действия) |
| “soft power” | мягкая сила (дип.) |
| to impinge on | посягать |
| to work hand in glove with | работать в тесном контакте |
| to be confronted by danger | сталкиваться с опасностью |
| to put one’s life on the line | рисковать жизнью |
| aircraft carriers | авианосцы |
| weapons of mass destruction (WMD) | оружие массового уничтожения |
| contingency (planning) strategies | стратегия планирования в чрезвычайной ситуации |
| Chancellor of the Exchequer | канцлер казначейства |
| to permeate both civilian and military sectors | охватывать гражданские и военные секторы |
| to place smth/smb on a statutory footing | подводить под ч-л законодательную базу |
| to advance smth/smb | выдвигать довод, предложение |

# MODULE VI

**Chapter 11**

**INTERNATIONAL CRIMES**

# UNIT 1

## Lead-in

What core crimes in your opinion fall under the jurisdiction of International Criminal Law?

## Text 1

## Introduction to International Criminal Law

**1. Scan the text and list the core crimes under International Criminal Law.**

**2. Skim the text below and find out if the text contains:**

a) the evaluation of future development of international criminal law

b) the way of transforming societies into right-respecting democracies

c) sources of international law

d) the most important areas of international law

International Law typically governs the rights and responsibilities of States. Criminal Law is concerned with prohibitions addressed to individuals, violations of which are subject to penal sanction by a State. The development of a body of International Criminal Law which imposes responsibilities directly on individuals and punishes violations through international mechanisms is relatively recent. Thus, International Criminal Law is a relatively new body of law which is not yet uniform, nor are its courts universal.

International Criminal Law is a body of Public International law designed to prohibit certain categories of conduct commonly reviewed as serious atrocities and to make perpetrations of such conduct criminally accountable for their perpetrations. The core crimes under international criminal law are genocide, war crimes, crimes against humanity and the crime of aggression.

International Criminal Law relates to other areas of International Law. The most important areas of International law are: Human Rights Law, International Humanitarian Law and the law relating to State responsibility.

Crimes against humanity and the development of the Law of Human Rights was partially inspired by a wish to ensure that the atrocities that characterized Nazi Germany were not repeated. Thus, the modern Law of Human Rights and a considerable part of International Criminal Law have a common base.

More recent developments in the enforcement of International Criminal Law, in particular the creation of the Tribunals, were introduced in response to mass abuses of human rights by States against their own citizens or others within their territory. International Criminal Law developed in this context to respond to egregious violations of human rights in the absence of effective alternative mechanisms.

Some precedents in International Law can be found before World War I. After World War II, the Allied powers set up an international tribunal to try not only war crimes, but crimes against humanity committed under Nazi regime. The Nuremberg Tribunal held its first session in 1945 and pronounced judgments on 30 September / 1 October 1946. The International Military Tribunal for the East was established for war crimes in Rwanda. It operated from 1946 to 1948. After the beginning of the war in Bosnia, the United Nations Security Council established the International Criminal Tribunal for former Yugoslavia (ICTY) in 1993 and, after the genocide in Rwanda, the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda in1994.

War crimes originate from the laws and customs of war, which accord certain protections to individuals in conflict situations. This is an important process of transforming societies into rights-respecting democracies and addressing past human rights violations. Investigation and trials of leaders who have committed crimes and caused mass political or military atrocities is a key demand of victims of human rights abuses. Prosecution of such criminals can play a key role in restoring dignity to victims and trusting relationship in society. The prosecution of severe international crimes is necessary to enforce international law and deliver justice to victims.

Genocide and crimes against humanity evolved to protect persons from gross human rights abuses including those committed by their own governments. With the probable exception of the crime of aggression with its focus on inter-State conflict, the concern of International Criminal Law is now with individuals and with their protection from wide-scale atrocities.

As International Criminal Law is a subset of International Law, its sources are those of International law. These are usually considered to be those enumerated in Article 38(1) (a)–(d) of the Statute of the International Court of Justice, in other words, treaty law, customary law, general principles of law and, judicial decisions and the writings of the most qualified publicists. As will be seen, all of these have been used by the ad hoc Tribunals. They are available for use by national courts in so far as the national system concerned will allow. Treaty-based sources of International Criminal Law, either directly or as an aid to interpretation, include the 1907 Hague Regulations, the 1949 Geneva Conventions and their additional protocols and the Genocide Convention.

In 1993 The International Law Commission had commenced preparatory work for the establishment of a permanent International Criminal Court (ICC). In 1998, at a Diplomatic Conference in Rome, the Rome Statute establishing the ICC was signed. The court can generally exercise jurisdiction only in cases where the accused is a national of a state party, the alleged crime took place on the territory of a state party or a situation is referred to the United Nations Security Council. CCI is designed to complement existing national judicial systems and can exercise its jurisdiction only when national courts are unwilling or unable to investigate or prosecute such crimes. Primary responsibility to investigate and punish crimes is therefore left to individual states.

**3. Answer the questions.**

1. What jurisdiction does ICC usually exercise?

2. Is the International Criminal Law a new one?

3. What are the sources of International Criminal Law?

4. Why was Nuremberg Tribunal set up?

5. What is the purpose of International Criminal Law?

6. Why is the prosecution of international crimes necessary?

**4. Decide whether these statements are true or false.**

1. The aim of international law is to make law-breakers accountable for their crimes.

2. International law governs the rights and responsibilities of citizens.

3. The law protecting human rights was to put an end to serious atrocities.

4. After World War II Allied powers set up a tribunal to try only war crimes.

5. The ICC can exercise jurisdiction only in cases when the accused is a national of a state party.

**5. Here are some answers to the questions based on the text above. They are not in any particular order. Write down suitable questions to these answers.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

In cases where the accused is a national of a state party.

2. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

Yes, it does.

3. \_\_ \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

Treaty law, customary law, judicial decisions.

4.\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

To try crimes against humanity committed under Nazi regime.

5. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

To prohibit serious atrocities and punish for them.

6. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

To enforce international criminal law and deliver justice to victims.

7.\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

Tribunals were created in response to mass abuses of human rights.

8.\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

Human Rights law, Humanitarian law and laws relating to state responsibility.

**6. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. subject to penal sanction | a. массовые нарушения прав человека |
| 2. to prohibit certain categories of conduct | b. осуществлять юрисдикцию |
| 3. criminally accountable for the perpetration of crimes | c. предмет уголовного наказания |
| 4. military atrocities | d. реагировать на вопиющие нарушения гражданских прав |
| 5. to respond to egregious violations of human rights | e. дополнять существующие национальные системы |
| 6. to complement existing national judicial systems | f. подлежащие уголовной ответственности за совершение преступлений |
| 7. mass abuses of human rights | g. запретить определенные категории поведения |
| 8. to exercise jurisdiction | h. военные злодеяния |

**7. Use the following word combinations in the sentences of your own.**

1. to pose a threat to

2. to comply with

3. the struggle against

4. to be suspected of

5. to take measures for (against)

6. to prevent

**8. What words can be used with the following prefixes. Some prefixes can be used more than ones.**

|  |
| --- |
| Mis-; out-; in-; inter-; un-; ir-; im-; over-; en-; dis-; de-; counter-. |
| Possible; come; terrorism; action; understanding; responsible; connect; danger; marriage; law; acceptable; tolerance; exorable; humanization. |

**9. Complete the chart with the name of a country, language, capital and the people of the country.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Country | Capital | Language | People |
| Germany |  |  | The German |
|  |  |  | The French |
|  |  | Dutch |  |
| Austria |  |  |  |
|  |  | Somali, Arab | The Somalis |
| India | New-Delhi |  |  |
| China |  | Chinese |  |
| Iraq |  |  | The Iraqi |
|  |  | Syriac | The Syrians |
| Rwanda |  | Somali, Arab |  |

**10. Read and translate.**

|  |
| --- |
| Rome Statute of The International Criminal Court.  ‘In the prospect of an international criminal court lies the promise of universal justice. That is the simple and souring hope of this vision. We are close to its realization. We will do our part to see it through till the end. We ask you to do yours in our struggle to ensure that no ruler, no State, no junta and no army anywhere can abuse human rights with impunity. Only then will the innocents of distant wars and conflicts know that they ,too, may sleep under the cover of justice; that they ,too, have rights, and that those who violate those rights will be punished’  Kofi Annan, United Nations Secretary General |

**11. Match the objectives of the International Criminal Court (1- 6) with their meanings (a –f)**.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. to achieve justice for all  2. to end impunity for abuse of human rights  3. to help end conflicts  4. to remedy the deficiencies of ad hoc tribunals  5. to take over when national criminal justice institutions are unwilling or unable to act  6. to deter future war criminals. | a. Those who commit murder are often not punished.  b, The International Criminal Court aims to discourage war criminals through the possibility of trial.  c. Courts set up specifically to try war criminals do not deliver justice.  d. Not everyone receives a fair trial.  e. Local courts may not always be able to deliver justice.  f. The International Criminal Court will try to stop war. |

**12. Read the text and find additional information in the Internet to prepare presentations on the International Criminal Court (ICC).**

1. The creation of the ICC

2. The structure and composition of the ICC

3. Crimes within the jurisdiction of the ICC

4. Enforcement of the ICC’s decisions

Universal jurisdiction asserted by a state must be distinguished from the jurisdiction of an international tribunal, such as the International Criminal Court (ICC), established in 2002. The International Criminal Court is an intergovernmental organization and international tribunal that sits in the Hague in the Netherlands. The ICC, made up of the 123 states, has the jurisdiction to prosecute individuals for such international crimes as genocide, crimes against humanity, and war crimes.

Besides, the ICC is intended to complement existing national judicial systems and that’s why this Court may only exercise its jurisdiction when certain conditions are met. For example, when national courts are unable to prosecute criminals or when the United Nations Security Council or individual states refer investigations to the Court.

The Court has four principal organs. They are: the Presidency, the Judicial Divisions, the Office of the Prosecutor and the Registry.

The Presidency is responsible for the proper administration of the Court. It comprises the President and the First and Second Vice-Presidents—three judges of the Court who are elected to the Presidency by their fellow judges for a maximum of two three-year terms.

The Judicial Divisions consist of 18 judges of the Court, organized into three chambers—the Pre-Trial Chamber, Trial Chamber and Appeals Chamber—which carry out the judicial functions of the Court.

The Office of the Prosecutor is responsible for conducting investigations and prosecutions. The Office of the Prosecutor is headed by the Chief Prosecutor, who is assisted by one or more Deputy Prosecutors. The Rome Statute provides that the Office of the Prosecutor shall act independently.

The Registry is headed by the Registrar, who is elected by the judges for a five-year term. This organ is responsible for the non-judicial aspects of the administration and servicing of the Court. This includes, among other things, the administration of legal aid matters, court management, victims and witnesses matters, defense counsel, detention unit and the traditional services, that is the administration of finance, translation and building management.

# UNIT 2

Lead-in

**1. What is the word *apartheid* associated with?**

**2. What countries suffered from apartheid?**

**3. Watch the video “Apartheid Explained” and answer the questions.**

* What explanation of apartheid is given?
* What features of apartheid are mentioned in the video?
* To what categories are people classified in South Africa?
* Can non-white people enjoy the same rights as white people?
* How were public facilities separated for white and non-white?
* In what meaning was the word *homeland* mentioned?
* Did people of South Africa try to resist apartheid?

**4. Comment on the following idea.**

Restoration of apartheid is impossible nowadays.

## Text

## Types of International Crimes

**1. Read the text. What is the essence of Article I and Article II 1948** **Convention on prevention and punishment of crime of genocide?**

The word “racism” was regarded as “a system that asserts the superiority of one racial group over another”. The founder of the doctrine of racism is considered Joseph de Gobineau who suggested in his “Essay on the impact of the racial composition of the considered companies on the characteristics of their culture, social system, economic models, and ultimately their civilizational success”. Racism in the US has existed since the foundation of the State. Society founded by white people differed on their national and religious ground. Slavery was nominally abolished in 1863 by Abraham Lincoln and in fact by the 13th Amendment to the Constitution which was adopted in 1865. But even after the abolition of slavery racism has existed for a long time in the form of segregated places “for whites only”.

In South Africa racism is presented in the form of apartheid. Apartheid, the most systematic form of institutionalized racial discrimination and segregation, has been practiced by the Government of South Africa as official policy since 1948. Under apartheid, black South Africans who represent the overwhelming majority of the people of the country are denied their most fundamental rights and liberties. They are not allowed to participate in the political life of the country and are subject to hundreds of repressive laws and regulations.

Both the General Assembly and the Security Council have declared apartheid incompatible with the Charter of the United Nations. The Assembly has condemned apartheid as a crime against humanity and the Security Council which has considered the question since 1950 has termed apartheid abhorrent to the conscience of mankind. South Africa, however, consistently maintained that the matter was within its domestic jurisdiction and that, under the Charter, the United Nations was barred from considering it. Since 1955 South Africa has not participated in the discussion of the question by the UN. In 1963 the General Assembly adopted the UN Declaration on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination which affirms that discrimination between human beings on the ground of race, colour or ethnic origin is an offence to human dignity. Two years later, on 21 December 1965, the International Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination was adopted. Racial discrimination is defined in the Convention as “any distinction, exclusion, restriction or preference based on race, colour. descent or national or ethnic origin which has the purpose or effect of nullifying or impairing the recognition, enjoyment or exercise, on an equal footing, of human rights and fundamental freedoms in the political, economic, social, cultural or any other fields of public life”.

Genocide is crime against humanity. It encompasses serious attacks on human dignity or a grave humiliation or degradation of human beings. The Rome Statute requires that they be committed as part of a widespread or systematic attack directed against any civilian population with knowledge of the attack. Such crimes can be committed in the time of peace as well as during an armed conflict. In Resolution of 11th December1945, the UN General Assembly for the first time defined the crime of genocide and determines it to be a crime under international law. On 9th December 1948 the draft resolution of the Convention on prevention and punishment of crime of genocide was adopted:

Article I. The contraction parties confirm that genocide whether committed in time of peace or war is a crime under international law which they undertake to prevent or punish.

Article II. In the present convention, genocide means any of the following acts committed with the intent to destroy, in whole or in part, a national, ethnical, racial or religious group as such: killing members of the group; causing serious bodily or mental harm; deliberately inflicting on the group conditions of life to bring about its physical destruction in whole or in part; imposing measures intended to prevent births within the group; forcibly transferring children of the group to another group.

Ethnic cleansing is frequently distinguished from genocide on the grounds that its purpose is to forcibly remove people from where they live rather than to kill them flat out. Ethnic cleansing is typically accompanied by rape, looting, compulsory labor, property seizure, family separation, humiliation, denial of medical treatment and other indignities. Ethnic cleansing may not go as far as genocide but exists on the same continuum of evil. Its intent is the same even if the means chosen are different.

The racial policies of South Africa have been discussed by the UN since 1946, when India complained that South Africa had enacted legislation against South African of Indian origin. During the 1950s, the General Assembly made repeated appeals to the South African Government to revise its apartheid policies in the light of the principles of the Charter. Beginning in 1962, the wider question of the policies of apartheid of the South African Government was included in the agenda of the General Assembly. As to elimination of racial discrimination on 30 November 1973 the General Assembly adopted the International Convention on the Suppression and Punishment of the Crime of Apartheid. The Convention provides that international responsibility for the crime of apartheid shall apply to individuals, members of organizations and institutions and representatives of a State whether residing in the State in which the acts are perpetrated or elsewhere.

**3. Answer the questions.**

1. What did the 13th Amendment to the US Constitution abolish?

2. What form of racism was in South Africa?

3. Why did the UN declare apartheid in South Africa incompatible with the Charter of the United Nations?

4. When was genocide defined for the first time as a crime under international law?

5. What is the difference between ethnic cleansing and genocide?

6. How does the Rome Statute define genocide?

1. What acts can be considered genocide?

8. What does the United Nations do to prevent crime?

**4. Decide whether these statements are true or false.**

1. Offences can be classified as international because of the behavior of the offenders.

2. Racial discrimination and segregation has been practiced as official policy by the Government of South Africa since 1948.

3. In 1963 the General Assembly affirmed that discrimination on the ground of race, color or ethnic origin was an offence to human dignity.

4. Since 1955 South Africa has not participated in the discussion of the question of apartheid by the UN.

5. The South African Government revised its apartheid policies in the light of the principles of the Charter.

6. In 1948 the draft resolution of the Convention on prevention and punishment of crime of genocide was adopted.

7. Forcibly removing people from their places is qualified as racism.

**5. Match the verbs on the right with the nouns on the left to make collocations.**

1. to consider a. individual
2. to abolish b. resolution
3. to represent c. slavery
4. to deny d. crime
5. to participate e. measures
6. to define f. the majority
7. to draft g. discussion
8. to impose h. legislation
9. to enact i. question
10. to apply to j. fundamental rights

**6. Some words are similar in spelling and pronunciation but have different meanings. Match words with their definitions and use them in the sentences of your own.**

1. Accept / except

a) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ besides, excluding

b)\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ receive, assume

2. Economic – economical

a) **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_**being careful of resources, cheap

b) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_relating to money, finance, industry, trade

3. Besides - beside

a)\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in addition

b)\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ near, next to

4. Council /counsel

a)\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ an assembly of people meeting regularly to discuss something

b) **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** a barrister conducting a case

5. Eligible /illegible

a)\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ no clear enough to be read

b\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ satisfying the necessary conditions

**7. Work in pairs. Match types of genocide and preventive measures. Report to the class.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Classification: All cultures have categories to distinguish people between ‘us and them’ by ethnicity, race, religion, or nationality. Bipolar societies are most likely to have genocide. | a. To combat this stage, membership of these militias should be outlawed. Their leaders should be denied visas for foreign travel. The UN should impose arms embargoes on governments and citizens of countries involved in genocidal massacres, and create commissions to investigate violations. |
| 2. Symbolization: We give names or other symbols to the classification. We name people or distinguish them by colour or dress; and apply symbols to members or groups. Classification and symbolysation are universally human and do not necessarily result in genocide unless they lead to another stage, dehumanization. When combined with hatred, symbols may be forced upon unwilling members of pariah groups. | b. Prevention may mean protection for moderate leaders or assistance to human rights groups. |
| 3. Dehumanization: One group denies the humanity of the other group. Members of it are equated with animals, vermin, insects or diseases. Dehumanization overcomes the normal human revulsion against murder. At this stage, hate propaganda in print and on hate radios is used to vilify the victim group. | c. The main preventive measure at this early stage is to develop universalistic institutions that transcend ethnic or racial divisions, that actively promote tolerance and understanding. |
| 4. Organization: genocide is always organized, usually by the state, often using the police to provide deniability of state responsibility. Special army units or the police are often trained and armed. Plans are made for genocide killings. | d. At this stage, a Genocide Emergency must be declared. If the political will of the great powers, regional alliances, or the UN Council can be mobilized, armed international intervention should be prepared, or heavy assistance provided to the victim group to prepare for its self-defense. |
| 5. Extremists drive the groups apart. Hate groups broadcast polarizing propaganda. Laws may forbid intermarriages or social interaction. | e. To combat symbolization, hate symbols can be legally forbidden (swastikas) alike the hate speeches. |
| 6. Preparation. Victims are identified and separated out because of their ethnic or religious identity. Death lists are drawn up. Members of victim groups are forced to wear identifying symbols. Their property is expropriated. They are often segregated into ghettoes, deported into concentration camps, or confined to a famine-struck region. | f. Local and international leaders should condemn the use of hate speech and make it culturally unacceptable. Leaders who incite genocide should be banned from international travel and have their foreign finances frozen. Hate radio stations should be shut down, and hate propaganda banned. Hate crimes and atrocities should be promptly punished. |

**8. Give Russian equivalents to the following English word combinations.**

1. intent to destroy a national ethnic group

2. to use hate propaganda to vilify the victim group

3. to promote tolerance and understanding

4. ethnic cleansing

5. to set up (establish) an international tribunal

6. to expropriate property

7. predictable but inexorable

8. grave humiliation

9. to inflict harm deliberately

10. to wear identifying symbols

**9. Give English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. осудить использование высказываний и символики, способствующих разжиганию ненависти

2. пропаганда ненависти в печатных изданиях и по радио

3. нанесение тяжких телесных и психических травм

4.введение эмбарго на поставки оружия правительствам

5. военизированные формирования

6. быть помещенным в гетто

7. депортировать в концентрационный лагерь

**10. Complete the chart with the definitions. Find a video describing one of these crimes and make a presentation.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Apartheid |  |
| Genocide |  |
| Racism |  |
| Ethnic cleansing |  |

## 

## Unit 3

## Text 1

## War crimes

**1. Read the text and answer the following questions.**

* What crimes can be referred to as war crimes?
* What are the elements of war crimes under international law?
* Can immunity extend to deliberate killing of civilians?

The most authoritative definition of *war crimes* was formulated in the London Charter of 8 August 1945, which established the International Military Tribunal at Nuremberg. It was adopted in 1946 by the General Assembly of the United Nations in a unanimous resolution approving of work of the Nuremberg Tribunal.

War Crimes are violations of the laws which include murder, ill treatment, or deportation to slave labor of civilian population in occupied territory, murder or ill treatment of prisoners of war or persons on the seas, killing of hostages, plunder of public or private property, wanton destruction of cities, towns or villages or devastation not justified by Under international law.

War crimes have the following elements: (1) they are acts of violence against civilian populations, prisoners of war, or in some cases enemy soldiers in the field; (2) they are committed primarily by military personnel; (3) they are in violation of the laws and customs of war; (4) they are not justified by military necessity; and (5) they often involve weapons or military methods of unusual cruelty or devastation.

In the broadest sense, a war crime is any act of violence by military personnel that exceeds the rules of war. War is by its very nature violent, and military acts in wartime—killing, capture, and destruction—would otherwise be considered criminal under the laws of all civilized societies. But every society suspends the application of its criminal law when dealing with military acts in time of war.

However, whatever immunity is accorded by these military acts in war extend only to conduct that conforms to the rules of war. Thus, the incidental killing of civilians in a bombing raid as part of a military operation is not murder because it is justified by military necessity. But the deliberate killing of defenseless civilians by infantrymen, in Vietnam or by militia groups in Bosnia or Kosovo, remains murder.

After World War II, the United Nations had taken over the major effort to codify the rules of war. It passed the Genocide Convention in 1948; a resolution against nuclear weapons in 1961; and a resolution on human rights, calling for protection of civilian populations in time of war, in 1968. In the early 1970s the United Nations also urged the International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC) to develop new agreements on rules of war that would take account of colonial and guerrilla wars, as well as new methods of warfare not covered by earlier conventions. The ICRC brought together a group of experts, who in 1977 produced two protocols to the 1949 Geneva Conventions, dealing with colonial wars of liberation, prisoner-of-war status, and protection of civilian populations (Protocols Additional to the Geneva Convention of August 12, 1949 and Relating to the Protection of Victims of International and Non-international Armed Conflicts, June 10, 1977, 1125 U.N.T.S 609). The United States did not ratify the 1977 protocols.

Another conference was held in Geneva in 1980, to consider restrictions on the use of certain conventional weapons. Three additional protocols were prepared in 1981, covering weapons that introduce non-detectable fragments into the human body; mines, booby traps and other devices; and incendiary weapons (United Nations Conference on Prohibitions or Restrictions on Use of Certain Conventional Weapons: Final Act, U.N. Doc., A/CONF. 95/15 of October 27, 1980 reprinted in 19 I.L.M. 1523, 1530).

In December 1997, 122 countries signed the Landmine Treaty (the Oslo Treaty), which grew out of the 1980 Geneva Conference, banning the use, sale, and production of antipersonnel mines, which ravaged many parts of Asia and Africa (Convention on the Prohibition of the Use, Stockpiling, Production and Transfer of Anti-personnel Mines and on their Destruction, 36 I.L.M. 1507). The treaty came into force on 1 March 1999, although the United States refused to sign because of objections made by the Department of Defense, which was concerned that it would inhibit its ability to respond to rogue nations who refused to obey or follow the restrictions contained in the treaty.

Efforts to declare the use of nuclear weapons a violation of international law and therefore a war crime have continued for many years. Proponents of such a declaration argue that nuclear weapons by their nature inflict excessive and unnecessary suffering on civilian populations, in violation of the 1907 Hague Convention and the 1949 Geneva conventions. In fact, in December 1963 a Japanese court did reach such a decision in the famed Shimoda case, in which victims of Hiroshima and Nagasaki sued the Japanese government for damages caused by the dropping of the atomic bombs on those cities. (The Japanese government had waived any claims by its citizens against the United States in the peace treaty of 1951, and thus was sued as a surrogate for the actual perpetrators.)

The Hague and Geneva conventions are a reflection, but not necessarily the source, of the laws of war. International law has evolved out of the customs and practices prevailing among civilized nations, and the rules of war as laid down in the conventions are but one expression of this common heritage. The conventions declare that all nations are bound by basic rules of warfare, whether or not they are signatories to the treaties and whether or not they attempt to withdraw their ratification.

Those common principles have not varied in their basic outlines for thousands of years: defenseless civilians should not be attacked, prisoners should not be killed, the wounded should be cared for, and weapons of unnecessary destructiveness should not be used.

**2. Read the text again and find the names of documents.**

1. relating to the Protection of Victims of International and Non-international armed conflicts;
2. banning the use and production of antipersonnel mines;
3. putting the blame for damages caused by dropping atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki;
4. dealing with colonial wars of liberation.

**3. Give English equivalent to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. следовать правилам ведения войны

2. ООН призывает к защите гражданского населения в военное время

3. заключать соглашения

4. ограничение использования обычного вооружения

5. причинять чрезмерные и необоснованные страдания гражданскому населению

6. убийство мирных граждан, оправданное военной необходимостью

**4. Complete the sentences with the correct verbs: *look, see, observe or watch.***

|  |
| --- |
| **See** means to notice people and things with your eyes  **Look** is used when you are trying to see something or someone  **Watch** means to look at something for a period of time, usually something which moves or changes |

1. Sometimes we have to … what we say not to hurt people’s feelings.
2. Every citizen has the right to……**.** his or her national and cultural traditions.
3. The criminal had plastic surgery to …… different.
4. I would like to …….these countries being given greater assistance.
5. We continue to … civilians paying the heaviest price during armed conflicts.
6. The police supervise and instruct the interrogators to **…** these provisions.
7. They staged everything to … like they were assaulted.
8. Every citizen has the right to… his or her national and cultural traditions.
9. The prisoners were forced to … people being tortured.
10. Our mission was simply to … events.

**5. Read the text. Work in pairs. Summarize information on the common features and differences between war crimes and crimes against humanity and complete the table.**

War crimes and crimes against humanity are terms referring to inhumane acts committed during times of conflict.

The international community condemns war crimes, crimes against humanity and grave consequences are sanctioned by the United Nations to any country or organization that participates in these acts.

War crimes, however, is a broader term compared to crimes against humanity. Crimes against humanity refer to acts of violence targeting a particular group for their race, religion or political orientation. War crimes can be any act of violence that may or may not fall in that particular definition.

Crimes against humanity must also be either a part of government policy or is being condoned or promoted by the government. War crimes, on the other hand, do not need to be condoned by the perpetrator’s government.

Crimes against humanity are usually attributed to the government or country as a whole while war crimes can be attributed to a specific person.

The definition of crimes against humanity includes the period before the war. Germany in World War II, for example, committed crimes against humanity and the Jewish people. War crimes, by definition, only include acts committed within the period of the war.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Common features | Different features |
|  |  |

# UNIT 4

## Text 1

## Transnational Crimes

## 1. Read the text and explain when transnational crimes can be considered as international crimes.

There are other crimes of international concern which have a huge impact on people throughout the world and on global economic development. Crimes which are the subject of international suppression Conventions but for which there is as yet no international criminal jurisdiction. They are transnational crimes.

These are crimes which have actual or potential transboundary effect and crimes which are intra-State but which offend a fundamental value of the international community. Thus, when criminal acts deals and schemes violate the laws of more than one country, they are used to be transnational crimes.

The prevention and punishment of transnational crimes requires cooperation among governments and among law enforcement agencies. A growing number of agreements are being concluded to provide for this in relation to such crimes as drugs trafficking, piracy, slavery, terrorism offences, torture, apartheid, enforced disappearances, transnational organized crime including people trafficking, smuggling migrants and illegal arms trafficking, and corruption. Some of these crimes are also crimes of customary international law or are international crimes when committed in certain circumstances (for example as crimes against humanity).

They include those which were listed as ‘treaty crimes’ in Draft Statute for ICC, but which were excluded from the Rome Statute in the course of the negotiations. Particular transnational crimes may in the future come to be dealt with as international crimes within the jurisdiction of an international jurisdiction, if States believe that the values they conflict with are sufficiently important to the international community and that international prosecution is an effective way of dealing with them.

**2. Read the text. Put the paragraphs (A-G) of the jumbled text in the correct order according to the plan:**

1) Introduction.

2) Examples of transnational crimes.

3) Factors that facilitate transnational crime.

4) Threatening situation in many countries**.**

5) Development of the world gangs.

6) What makes transnational crime so attractive.

7) Possible solution of the problem.

A) The situation is really particularly threatening in many countries because of the close relationship of state structures with organized crime.

Official corruption reflects only part of the situation. When the law is inadequately enforced, people feel that they can go unpunished. Territory borders have come to represent challenges rather than permanent barriers to the international gangsters.

B) Transnational crime is clearly a difficult phenomenon to pin down, but a solution may be found in a successful union of strategic intelligence and a joined-up approach to law and policing. It often requires coordinated action between government departments of different states, involving police, customs and even military authorities. Interpol keeps a database of the world's most wanted criminals, physical evidence is becoming increasingly important with DNA profiles and fingerprinting as principal weapon in tracing criminals. Specialist- led crime teams are operating in Europe with the aim of tackling drug trafficking and organized crime. They help intelligence officers to investigate pornography, firearms and drug offences.

C) In addition to the crimes mentioned above, transnational crime also embraces a variety of activities, such as tobacco smuggling, arms trafficking, credit card fraud, forgery, counterfeiting and people smuggling.

D) As crime becomes increasingly international, police forces around the globe are working together to stem a rising tide of murder, drug trafficking and money laundering.

E) Although the world has long known of the US Mafia and the Chinese Triads, the gangsters of Italy have only become globally infamous in the last decade or so. There has been a huge explosion in crime because the gangsters have mutated into global players.

F) Experts believe that the rise of transnational crime has been facilitated by two sets of factors. Firstly, globalisation. Freer border controls, the internet, e-mail provide new opportunities for criminals. Secondly, economic and technological change goes hand-in-hand with political instability. The end of the cold war increased cross-border movements, old systems collapsed and new governments struggled with immature legal systems. As a result, transnational crime is fast becoming a key factor threatening both the economic integrity and political stability of a number of strategically significant states and regions.

G) The global narcotics industry makes enough money and employs enough people to whet the appetite of the most industrialist or management consultant. It is an industry that does not advertise and guarantees a big profit everywhere. Illegal drugs make up 8 per cent of world trade, which is worth more than the combined global market for textiles, clothing, iron and steel.

**3. Identify the crimes according to their descriptions.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. | buying and selling drugs illegally. |
| 2. | the crime of making fake bank notes, coins, jewellery, perfume, footwear, clothing. |
| 3. | transferring illegal or stolen money into an ordinary bank account, usually by a complex process to avoid detection. |
| 4. | the crime of copying money, documents in order to deceive people. |
| 5. | the condition of being sexually interested in children: sexual activity with children. |
| 6. | offence of taking goods illegally in or out of a country, without paying any tax. |
| 7. | paying money or giving your favour to someone, usually an official, so that he does what you want. |
| 8. | a secret organization of criminals that originates in Sicily |

**4. Look through the text and summarize the factors leading to the transnational crimes.**

## 

## Terrorism

**5. Read the information on terrorism. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words and word combinations from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| The primary purpose, to intimidate politicians, international community ,the global problem, controversial, legally binding definition, government agencies |

Terrorism is \_\_\_\_ 1\_\_\_\_ nowadays that endangers life of every person on the earth. \_\_\_\_\_2\_\_\_\_\_ of all governments is to encourage and enable people to join their forces against terrorism and win it by common efforts.

The definition of terrorism has proved \_\_\_\_\_3\_\_\_\_. Various legal systems and \_\_\_\_\_4\_\_\_\_\_ use different definitions of terrorism in their legislation. Moreover, the \_\_\_\_\_5\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ has been slow to formulate a universally agreed, \_\_\_\_\_\_6\_\_\_\_\_ of this crime. These difficulties arise from the fact that the term "terrorism" is politically and emotionally charged.

As a whole terrorism means aggressive actions with the use of violence against ordinary civilians aimed \_\_\_7\_\_\_. Term "terrorism" is often used to show that the actions taken by a group of people are violent, unlawful and immoral*.*

**6. What is the main idea of the text?**

**7. Comment on the following statements:**

- To exterminate the evil by another evil is impossible, and taking united aggressive actions against acts of terror can do nothing.

- Aiming to get rid of terrorism, the war just lighted the fire of hatred between different nationalities.

- One person’s freedom fighter is another person’s terrorist.

## Text 2

## Piracy

**1. Read the text. With your partner discuss the main ideas of the text. Report them to the class.**

Piracy is a criminal offence known to mankind since ancient times. The term “piracy” means sea robbery. Piracy refers to the international criminal offences which are regulated by the national law of individual states and public international law. The international legal fight against piracy is regulated by Geneva Convention on the High Seas in 1953 and 1958. According to these conventions no State has the right to patronize piracy, any military ship is entitled to pursue the pirate ship on the high seas and in case of disobedience or resistance to sink it, members of the crew of the pirate ship are subject to criminal liability.

Objective side of the crime is characterized by the attack on the ship or riverboat committed with violence or threat of violence. The subjective aspect of the crime is expressed in the direct intent. Piracy is recognized as a crime committed repeatedly by using weapons or items used as weapons.

This long forgotten phenomenon reappeared in the mid-1970s, manifesting itself in the illegal shipment of narcotics from South and Central America in yachts and fishing vessels to the United States. Piracy in South-East Asia is believed to be controlled by organized crime. Criminologists are inclined to infer that synchronized attacks on vessels in different parts of the world are not coincidental and can be traced to a single center.

Under the Law of the Sea piracy consists of any of the following acts:

a) any illegal acts of violence or detention, or any act of depredation, committed for private ends by the crew or the passengers of a private ship or a private aircraft, and directed on the seas, against another ship or aircraft, or against persons or property on board such ship or aircraft; against a ship, aircraft, persons or property in a place outside the jurisdiction of any State;

b) any act of voluntary participation in the operation of a ship or of an aircraft with knowledge of facts making it a pirate ship or aircraft;

c) any act of inciting or of intentionally facilitating an act described in subparagraph (a) or (b) (LOS Convention, art.101).

**2. Fill in the gaps using words and word combinations from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| the organized crime gang; robbing the ship and crew; falls under three categories; seek funding or political settlement; to make a quick profit; for ransom; associated with; taking over fishing boats; coordinate an ambush; depletion of some fish stocks; equipment; hijacking the ship |

Piracy occurring either at sea or in ports \_\_\_1\_\_, all of which exist in the Straits of Malacca - opportunistic pirate seizing a chance \_\_2\_\_; “gang” pirate belonging to an organized crime syndicate; and "political" pirate \_\_\_3\_\_\_ a terrorist or secessionist group. The first type operates in small groups with fast boats going after easy targets - often \_\_\_4\_\_\_ of money and valuables. The second type \_\_\_5\_\_\_ with sophisticated arms and \_\_\_6\_\_\_- stealing a large cargo load, kidnapping the crew \_\_\_7\_\_\_, or \_\_\_8\_\_\_, which requires careful planning, skilled seamanship, significant funding, and some cooperation from port authorities. In recent years, fish piracy has been connected to the organized crime in Asia. Due to the \_\_\_9\_\_\_, the value of some species has soared, resulting in pirates taking over fishing boats with their prized catch or poaching shellfish, such as abalone, in the Pacific Ocean. The third type seeks \_\_\_10\_\_\_ in an act of pirate terrorism - conducting similar operations as the \_\_\_11\_\_\_.with the objective of sustaining terrorist activity.

**3. Match the statements with the information on piracy given in tasks 1 and 2. Some information is not available.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. On the high sea in case of disobedience any State has the right to sink pirate ship. | \_\_\_\_\_\_ |
| 2. One of the types of piracy is tomake a quick profit that is robbing the ship and crew of money and valuables | \_\_\_\_\_ |
| 3. A crime committed repeatedly with violence or threat of violence or by using weapons can be qualified as a piracy. | \_\_\_\_\_ |
| 4. The hot pursuit of a ship may be undertaken when the competent authorities have good reason to believe that the ship has violated the laws of that state. | \_\_\_\_\_ |
| 5. Due to the depletion of fish resources fish piracy became one of the form of he organized crime | \_\_\_\_\_\_ |
| 6. Pirates operations as the organized crime gang to support terrorist activity. | \_\_\_\_\_ |
| 7. Any illegal acts of violence or detention committed by the crew or by the passengers of a private ship and directed on ship or persons in a place outside the jurisdiction of any State is a piracy. | \_\_\_\_\_ |
| 8. To assess the piracy as an act resulted in death of a person, it is necessary to establish a casual link between the action of the perpetrator and the victim’s death | \_\_\_\_\_\_ |
| 9. Stealing a large cargo load and kidnapping the crew for ransom requires careful planning and significant funding. | \_\_\_\_\_ |
| 10. Sea robbery as a criminal offence known to mankind since ancient times. | \_\_\_\_\_\_ |

**4. Some words have exactly the same pronunciation but different spelling and meaning. Match them.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. one | a. I |
| 2. write | b. knows |
| 3. nose | c. right |
| 4. piece | d. pear |
| 5. war | e. won |
| 6. pair | f. peace |
| 7. pause | g. reign, rein |
| 8. rain | h. paws |
| 9. so | i. sew, sow |
| 10. eye | j. wore |

1. **Make presentations on the following topics**

1. Joined efforts of the UN and other international organizations to combat international crimes.

2. Piracy. Somali, UN Resolutions.

3. The Nuremberg International Military Tribunal.

## Text 3

## Corruption

**Vocabulary**

1. to operate in close collaboration - работать в тесном сотрудничестве

2. cronyism - кумовство, блат

3. influence peddling – торговля влиянием

4. to be done under color of law – действовать в соответствии с законом

5. nepotist government – правительство, оказывающее протекцию своим родственникам

6. to embezzle money by misusing funds from tax payments – хищение денег путем злоупотребления средствами из налоговых платежей

7. to conceal the source of money – скрыть источник денег

8. bookkeeping gymnastics – бухгалтерская гимнастика

9. price-fixing conspiracies and corporate mergers – ценовые сговоры и корпоративные слияния

**1. Read the text.**

Corruption is one of the most severe forms of crime that has a widespread manifestation in modern societies. Corruption, as a criminal offense, cannot be identified as organized crime, but it operates in close collaboration with it, with open agreements as well as drawing benefits from each other and especially in the organized protection of criminal activity. In terms of criminal law, corruption includes the following offences: bribe receiving (passive bribery), bribe giving (active bribery) and affected trading, in order to misuse public authorizations of the responsible official person as well as any misuse of the official position of the perpetrator in order to gain personal benefits.

Corruption can take different forms. Forms of corruption vary, but include bribery, extortion, cronyism (nepotism)**,** patronage, influence peddling, graft and embezzlement. Corruption may facilitate criminal enterprise such as drug trafficking, money laundering, and human trafficking.

Political corruption is the use of powers by government officials for illegitimate private gain. An illegal act by an officeholder constitutes political corruption only if the act is directly related to their official duties, is done under color of law or involves trading in influence. Misuse of government power for other purposes, such as repression of political opponents and general brutality, is also considered political corruption.

Kleptocracy is a form of political corruption in which the ruling government seeks personal gain and status at the expense of the governed, literally meaning “the rule by thieves.” Typically this system involves the embezzlement of state funds at the expense of the population. Kleptocracies are generally associated with dictatorships, oligarchies, military juntas, or other forms of autocratic or nepotist governments in which external oversight is impossible or does not exist. The effects of kleptocratic regime or government on a nation are typically adverse in regards to the welfare of a state’s economy, political affairs and civil rights. Kleptocratic governance typically ruins prospects of foreign investment and drastically weakens the domestic market and cross-border trade. As kleptocracies often embezzle money from their citizens by misusing funds from tax payments, or engage heavily in money laundering schemes, they tend to heavily degrade quality of life for citizens.

Money laundering is the process of creating the appearance that large amounts of money obtained from serious crimes, such as drug trafficking or terrorist activity, originated from a legitimate source. There are three steps involved in the process of laundering money: placement, layering, and integration. Placement refers to the act of introducing “dirty money” into financial system in some way; layering is the act of concealing the source of that money by way of a series of complex transactions and bookkeeping gymnastics; and integration refers to the act of acquiring that money in purportedly legitimate means.

Antitrust laws are the laws that are applied to virtually all industries and every level of business, including manufacturing, transportation, distribution and marketing. They prohibit a variety of practices that restrain trade. Examples of illegal practices are price-fixing conspiracies and corporate mergers. They reduce competitive vigor of particular markets, and try to achieve or maintain monopoly power.

International Contract Corruption. The FBI’s International Corruption Unit (ICU) has program management responsibility over cases involving international fraud against the government and international corruption of federal public officials. These cases typically involve bribery, gratuities, contract extortion, bid rigging, collusion, conflicts of interest, product substitution, items/services invoiced without delivery, diversion of goods, and corporate and individual conspiracies at various levels. Misuse funds overseas poses a threat to the countries by promoting corruption within the host nation, damaging diplomatic relations, inadvertently supporting insurgent activity, and potentially strengthening criminal and terrorist organizations.

The United Nations Convention against Corruption (UNCAC) is a multilateral convention negotiated by members of the United Nations. It is the first global legally binding international anti-corruption instrument. UNCAC requires that Member States implement several anti-corruption measures which may affect their laws, institutions and practices. These measures aim at preventing [corruption](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corruption), including domestic and foreign [bribery](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bribery), [embezzlement](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Embezzlement), trading in influence and money laundering. Furthermore, the UNCAC is intended to strengthen international law enforcement and judicial cooperation, providing effective legal mechanisms for [asset recovery](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_asset_recovery), [technical assistance](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Technical_Assistance) and information exchange. The Convention requires countries to establish criminal and other offences to cover a wide range of acts of corruption, if these are not already crimes under domestic law.

**2. Answer the questions.**

1. Why is corruption considered to be the most serious crime?

2. What forms of corruption are described?

3. What factors can lead to corruption?

4. What are social consequences of corruption?

5. What steps are taken by the UN to combat corruption?

**3. Decide whether these statements are true or false. What information is not mentioned in the text?**

1. Corruption is an organized crime drawing benefits protection of criminal activity.

2. The commercial bribery prohibits the payment of bribes of private persons and businesses and this type of bribe is often referred to as kickback or payoff.

3. Any abuse of the official authority in order to gain personal benefits. is corruption.

4. The use of powers by government officials, repression of political opponents that directly related to their official duties is considered political corruption.

5. Such forms of autocratic or nepotist governments in which external oversight is impossible or does not exist is a type of political corruption. T

6. The act of introducing “dirty money” into financial system and then concealing the source of that money by way of a series of complex transactions is a form of political corruption.

7. Another method used to launder funds involves instances in which suppliers never receive payment for products and “clean” money is legally invested in the economy.

8. Antitrust laws regulate price-fixing conspiracies and corporate mergers, reduce competitive vigor of particular markets and restrain trade.

9. The United Nation’s global legally binding international anti-corruption document is aimed at preventing [corruption](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corruption), including domestic and foreign [bribery](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bribery), [embezzlement](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Embezzlement), trading in influence and money laundering. T

10. Corruption poses a threat to the countries by damaging diplomatic relations, supporting insurgent activity and potentially strengthening criminal and terrorist organizations.

**4. Match each abbreviation (1-11) with its full form (a-k).**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. ICC | a) North Atlantic Treaty Organization |
| 2. ICTY | b) International Criminal Tribunal for the former Yugoslavia |
| 3. ICTR | c) Organization of African Unity |
| 4. IHL | d) International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda |
| 5. CAT | e) ( NATO) Kosovo Force |
| 6. UNCAC | f) International humanitarian law |
| 7. ICRC | g) International Committee for the Red Cross |
| 8. IMT | h) Convention against Torture |
| 9. KFOR | i) The United Nation Convention against Corruption |
| 10. OAU | j) International Military Tribunal |
| 11. NATO | k) International Criminal Court |

**5. Role-play.**

Act out a press- conference devoted to the problem of corruption, its roots, forms, adverse impact and ways to combat it.

The participants of the press-conference are: representatives of government, lawyers, bankers, businessmen, journalists, etc.

The roles are distributed beforehand. Make use of newspaper material and the Internet resources to speak at the press-conference.

It is necessary to appoint two chairmen. They are to prepare topical questions and be able to give their opinions to conduct the discussion.

**6. Write an essay on the topic “Transnational crimes”** (15-20 sentences). Present it in the class.

Writing strategy:

1. A short introduction specifies the topic of the essay.

2. Write some paragraphs to form the main body of the essay. Use information from different sources (texts, the Internet resources, mass media) to justify your ideas.

3. In conclusion you will have to express your own opinion on the most important matters of your essay.

# UNIT 5

# Human Trafficking

Lead-in

**- Have you heard about human trafficking? What in particular?**

**Work in pairs. Can human trafficking be considered as an international crime? Give your reasons.**

If we consider the notion of international crime we should assume that human trafficking is one of its greatest manifestation. Today human trafficking as an international act includes modern-day slavery, sex trafficking, illegal organ removal and the use of child soldiers. These criminal activities involve the coordinated efforts of three or more individuals to achieve some common benefit, and frequently, these activities involve more than one country.

**Text 1**

**Human Trafficking – Disaster of Modern Times**

**Vocabulary**

1. human trafficking – торговля людьми
2. human exploitation –эксплуатация людей
3. under the menace – под угрозой
4. vulnerability of people - уязвимость людей
5. to turn humans into merchandise – превращать людей в товар
6. to find employment – найти работу
7. family violence – насилие в семье
8. persons without permanent residence – люди без постоянного места жительства
9. to use the extreme plight of these people – использовать крайне тяжелое положение этих людей

10. to turn migrants into debtors – обращать мигрантов в должников

**1. Read the text and match the titles with the paragraphs. Work in pairs and explain your point of view.**

1. People from other states

2. The main reasons

3. The most probable victims

4. The notion of the subject

5. The providers and consumers

a) The problem of human illegal exploitation has got the tremendous size and terrible forms nowadays. The International Labor Office gave the definition of forced labor and it includes “all work or service which is exacted from any person under the menace of any penalty and for which the said person has not offered himself voluntarily”.

b) According to the official mass media, the majority of forced laborers are located in the Asia and Pacific region with industrialized countries and Latin America and Caribbean taking the second and the third places respectively. According to the UN about 4 million people - women, children and men - are trafficked annually. On the top of the countries of these people origin are eleven countries: Belarus, Moldova, Russia, Ukraine, Albania, Bulgaria, Lithuania, Romania, China, Thailand and Nigeria. The destination country list mostly consist of Belgium, Germany, Greece, Israel, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, Thailand, Turkey, the United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia, Scandinavia and the US.

c) Why do humans become victims of illegal sale and slavery in the 21st century? The vulnerability of people facing recruiters who turn humans into merchandise can be explained by poverty and the failure to find employment. This pushes people towards drastic actions, and makes them use risky economic behaviour models and agree to illegal migration, exploitation and slave labour.

d) The list of the most vulnerable social groups that become victims of human trafficking may be long. The main of them are children, adolescents, youth, and young women, villages and small town dwellers, recent migrants to the cities, people with low education levels and lack of professional education. Traffickers engage the unemployed, persons psychologically inclined towards risky behaviour, children from “at risk” families (poor, families of alcoholics, dysfunctional families, persons experiencing family violence etc.), drug addicts; prostitutes, single mothers; persons without permanent residence, etc.

e) Labour migrants, who come to industrial countries in order to earn money for their families and themselves are ready for any illegal employment and thus are very likely to become victims of human traffickers. Human traffickers use the extreme plight of these people for getting profit. The actual organizers or accomplices in human trafficking apply various methods to retain migrants and force them to work. These methods may be confiscation of passports; non-payment of wages; violence; psychological pressure; threat of reporting to the authorities; as well as turning migrants into debtors with the help of fines and deductions. As a result, migrants have to put up with unsatisfactory labor and accommodation conditions, lack of wages, overtime, lack of opportunity to leave the facility, poor nutrition or starvation conditions, beatings and unacceptable living conditions.

**2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. для того, чтобы заработать деньги |  |
| 2. сделать мигрантов должниками |  |
| 3. наиболее уязвимые социальные группы |  |
| 4. жертвы незаконной торговли и рабства |  |
| 5. незаконная эксплуатация людей |  |
| 6. под угрозой наказания |  |
| 7. продаются ежегодно |  |
| 8. лица, употребляющие наркотики |  |
| 9. дети из семей группы риска |  |
| 10.вынуждены мириться с неудовлетворительными условиями труда и проживания |  |

**3. Look at the definitions to match them with the correspondent notions.**

1. Human trafficking

2. Modern-day slavery

3. Sex trafficking

4. Illegal organ removal

5. The use of child soldiers

A) Kidnapping and selling humans for work or service which is required from them under the menace of penalty and for which the said humans have not offered themselves voluntarily.

B) Unlawful recruitment or use of youngsters under 18 through force, fraud, coercion, frequently as combatants by armed forces.

C) Control over victims, use of force, drugs, emotional tactics as well as financial means are used. In certain circumstances, various forms of violence, such as gang rape and mental and physical abuse may be applied.

D) Trafficking in human beings, under force, for further transplanting parts of their bodies for other individuals who pay for these “services” to the traffickers making great illegal financial profit.

E) An act of recruiting, transporting, transferring, harboring or receiving a person through a use of force, coercion or other means, for the purpose of exploiting them.

**4. Match the words naming people to their synonyms, for example: *the said person –the mentioned above*.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. laborers | a. owe money |
| 2. humans | b. offended |
| 3. recruiters | c. help somebody |
| 4. victims | d. responsible for business |
| 5. adolescents | e. sellers |
| 6. town dwellers | f. non-residents |
| 7. migrants | e. live not in the village |
| 8. traffickers | g. already not kids and not yet adults |
| 9. unemployed | h. search and attract the clients |
| 10. drug addicts | i. people |
| 11. actual organizers | j. employees |
| 12. accomplices | k. depended on narcotics |
| 13. debtors | l. without work |

**5. Work in pairs and answer the questions:**

1. How can human trafficking be legally classified?
2. Why do people obey recruiters?
3. What are groups “at risk” and why?
4. What are the methods to retain migrants and force them to work?
5. What countries are the main sources of human trafficking and what are the consumers? Can you explain why exactly these countries play these roles?
6. What should a person do not to become a victim of recruiters?

**6. Read the words below. They are of international origin. It means you may easily understand their meanings. Use as many words as possible in the sentences of your own. With your partner translate them into Russian.**

To exploit, production, service, to dominate, domestic, to pretend, to be manipulated, emotional tactics, effective, hotel industry, modeling contracts, familial, physically, psychologically or emotionally, to progress, tattoo.

**7. Read a part of the interview about modern slavery with a boy who tried to find out the scheme of human trafficking. Render it to your partner in English.**

## - Как попадают в рабы?

- Банально. Вот, допустим, как вербуют людей на вокзальной площади крупного города. За появившимся там одиноким человеком наблюдают пару дней. Потом его пытаются напоить. Я сам переодевался в бездомного. Ко мне подошел человек, налил спиртного, только потом я узнал, что там был клофелин. Очнулся уже в автобусе по дороге в Махачкалу - на рынок рабов. Хорошо, что был обвешан датчиками, меня спасли еще в пути. Многих из малых городов манят хорошей зарплатой, а потом обманывают и увозят на кирпичные заводы. Или еще куда-то. Хотя завод - громко сказано. Обычно это чистое поле, никакой колючей проволоки или забора, вырыта яма с глиной - и рабский труд. Владельцы таких заводиков получают десятки миллионов прибыли. Ведь они не платят зарплату, налоги.

**- Почему люди не убегают тогда?**

- Пытаются, но их ловят, избивают до полусмерти и возвращают обратно в подвал. Рабов психологически ломают, спаивают или запугивают. Да и современное рабство - это не цепи или кандалы. Все куда проще. Отняли паспорт, и куда денешься без него?

**Text 2**

**Sex Trafficking**

**Vocabulary**

1. sex trafficking – продажа людей в сексуальное рабство
2. forced labor – принудительный труд
3. to dominate three times over – в три раза превышать что-то
4. pimp-controlled trafficking – торговля людьми, контролируемая сутенерами
5. vulnerable – уязвимый
6. to obtain control over their victims – иметь контроль над жертвами
7. **Read the text and answer the question: who are the victims of sex trafficking and why?**

The major form of forced labor is exploitation in spheres of production or service (about 70%).The sexual exploitation accounts for about 23% annually and transnational trafficking dominates three times over domestic cases.

In order to obtain control over their victims, traffickers use force, drugs, emotional tactics as well as financial means. In certain circumstances, they will even resort to various forms of violence, such as gang rape and mental and physical abuse. Sometimes the captors pretend to “love” and “need” the girls, even going so far as promise marriage and future stability. This is particularly effective with younger victims, because they are more inexperienced and therefore easily manipulated. Traffickers sometimes use threats, intimidation, and kidnapping as means of obtaining victims.

In some cases, traffickers approach very vulnerable women (including underage girls) to offer them “legitimate” work or the promise of an opportunity for education. The main types of work are in the catering and hotel industry, in bars and clubs, modeling contracts.

In some countries there is so called familial trafficking, where a victim is controlled by family members who allow her to be sexually exploited in exchange for something, such as drugs or money. For example, a mother may allow her boyfriend to abuse a child in exchange for a place to stay.

In pimp-controlled trafficking, the victim is controlled physically, psychologically or emotionally by a single pimp. The pimp first gains the trust of the victim and make her to become dependent on him. Once the victim is comfortable, the pimp moves to another stage, where he will ask the victim to perform sexual acts for him, which the victim will do because she believes it is the only way to keep the trafficker's affection. The requests progress from there and it can be difficult for the victim to escape.

In gang human trafficking the victim is controlled by some persons. Gangs are more often turning to sex trafficking as it is seen as safer and more lucrative than drug trafficking. A victim controlled by gang trafficking may be sexually exploited by gang members as well as sold outside of the gang. They may tattoo their victims to show their ownership over them.

**2. In the text find English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

банда, жертва, татуировка, перейти к следующей стадии, требования, завоевать доверие, в обмен на что-то, претворяться, неопытный, запугивание, стать зависимым от кого-то, сохранить чье-то внимание

**3. Work in small groups. Use the following cluster and to speak on the topics of the text using the key words.**

**Sex trafficking**

Gang trafficking (key words): more than one person, safer and more lucrative, exploited by, sold outside, tattoo.

Ways used by traffickers to get the victims (key words): violence, rape, abuse, “love”, marriage, younger girls.

Familial trafficking (key words): controlled, allow, in exchange of, for drugs or money, place to stay.

The “legitimate” way (key words): education, catering, hotels, bars, modeling “legitimate” way: education, catering, hotels, bars, modeling.

Pimp-controlled trafficking (key words): physically, psychologically or emotionally controlled, gains the trust, dependent on, to perform sexual acts for him, the only way to, difficult to escape.

**4. Work in pairs. Every line has the odd word. Write it out.**

**Child Soldiers**

1. A child soldier is any of person under 18 years of age who is a part\_\_\_\_\_

2. of any kind of regular or irregular armed force or the armed group\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. in any capacity, were including but not limited to cooks, porters,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. messengers, spies and anyone accompanying of such groups other\_\_\_\_\_

5. than family members. The definition does also includes girls\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. recruited for sexual purposes and for forced marriage. Such a\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. children are often enforced to have leave their homes, trafficked\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. to the territory of military conflicts and is made to participate in\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. hostilities under their threat of death.

**Text 3**

**International Organ Trafficking**

**1. Answer the questions. With your partner discuss your answers.**

a) Do you know that there is a medical practice of transplanting human organs of people who were killed in road accidents, but their organs are still healthy and alive, to other people who are chronically ill and who are waiting in a queue for these organs? And this is the way to save their lives. Have you seen films or read something about this practice?

b) Have you ever heard of people who earn money by kidnapping or forcing others to give their organs? Have you known about such form of terrorism as organ trafficking?

**Vocabulary**

1. to estimate – оценивать что-либо
2. reduction in number - сокращение количества
3. available for transplant – пригодные для трансплантации
4. seatbelt legislation – законодательство, связанное с необходимостью использования ремней безопасности в автомобиле
5. to become routine – становиться широко распространённым (обычным) делом
6. heart, kidney or pancreas – сердце, почки или поджелудочная железа
7. to be duped into believing – заставить поверить обменным путем

**2. Read the text and translate it.**

This illegal trade has risen to such a level that an estimated 10,000 black-market operations involving purchased human organs now take place Among common terrifying disasters of our time is international organ trafficking that has become a growing trade.

The growth happens due to two factors. The first factor deals with the reduction in number of legitimate organs available for transplant. It happens partly due to better seatbelt legislation, which has cut the number of healthy young adults dying in road traffic accidents. This consequently increased the value of organs to be transplanted. Second is the fact that an increased number of people waiting for transplants have become more routine in recent years. As a result, organized criminals can now make a fortune from unethical clinics who will buy a heart, kidney or pancreas for wealthy patients.

It is now possible to order an organ on the internet. It’s also possible, if you are poor, desperate, and willing to part with, say, a kidney, to make a deal with traffickers and sell it. Recent research by the World Health Organization (WHO) found that traffickers illegally obtain 7,000 kidneys each year around the world. A victim is usually promised to be paid from $10,000 to $12,000 per a kidney and then traffickers sell it for $80,000-90,000 to the recipient.

Organ trafficking operates in various ways. Victims can be kidnapped and forced to give up an organ; some, out of financial desperation, agree to sell an organ; or they are duped into believing they need an operation and the organ is removed without their knowledge. Some victims are murdered to order if a large sum has been paid in advance.

The World Health Organization estimates that illegal organ trafficking accounts for five to ten per cent of all annually made transplants worldwide.

**3. Сhoose answer a, b, or c according to the text.**

**1. The growth of illegal trade increased because**

1. it became easier to transport the organs.
2. of the two main reasons.
3. it became more available.

**2. The number of transport accidents became not so numerous**

1. because drivers and passengers must use seatbelts while driving.
2. because of better legislation.
3. because seatbelts have become of better quality.

**3. The queue of people who are waiting for organs in recent years**

1. has become shorter.
2. has become larger.
3. is a usual thing in our time.

**4. A victim can make a deal with traffickers**

1. and to sell his organ eight or ten times cheaper than they get.
2. and get nothing for it.
3. and to give it free.

**5. Organs can be taken away in different ways:**

1. victims give their organs by themselves.
2. they are made to be operated.
3. organs are taken by force.

**6. Some people are duped into believing they need an operation.**

1. They really need an operation
2. They believe that they are healthy.
3. They are forced to believe that the operation is necessary.

**7. The organ is removed without their knowledge.**

1. The organ is not taken out.
2. The victim doesn’t know that the organ has been taken out.
3. The victim wants his organ to be taken out.

**4. Put a special question to every paragraph of the text. Change your questions with your partner and answer them.**

**5. Sentences a- e were taken out of the text. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate sentences to make the text completed.**

**Human Trafficking - Slavery in Modern Society**

Human trafficking is one of the greatest known problems facing different countries. The most pertinent aspects of this topic include: who is trafficked, causes of trafficking, and the steps that have been and need to be taken to combat trafficking.

The people most affected by trafficking are women and children. The current economic situation in these countries sometimes makes it difficult for women to find employment and provide for their families, \_\_\_1**\_\_\_**.

Trafficking \_\_\_2\_\_\_ including government corruption, poverty and economic instability, inefficient legal systems and the incentive of financial gain in the trade. The corruption is so deep that many law enforcement officers are involved in the trafficking industry. The corruption is particularly problematic in neighboring countries with whom trade is conducted, as law enforcement and local police are often customers and \_\_\_3\_\_\_.

Another reason that trafficking continues to function with relative ease is because the legal systems in these countries are not well developed. Oftentimes offenders are not convicted and, if they are, their terms are minimal, \_\_\_4\_\_\_. Often, even if women are rescued, they remain scarred and they are not able to receive the legal and psychological help they need. Many are dragged back into trafficking.

Human trafficking is a complex issue that is difficult to address. Much more needs to be done to stop human trafficking, \_\_\_5\_\_\_ it will continue.

1. but as long as it remains fueled by economic disparity and local corruption;
2. have deals with the traffickers;
3. is caused by a combination of factors;
4. putting themselves and their children at high risk for trafficking;
5. usually less than a year.

**6. Work with you partner. Make a table of two columns.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| What are the reasons for being a victim of human trafficking? | What is not to be done by a person to avoid becoming a victim of human trafficking? |
| 1. | 1. |
| 2. | 2. |
| 3. | 3. |
| 4. | 4. |

**7. Role-play. Conduct a round-table discussion on the topic “Measures taken by the worldwide community to combat human trafficking”.**

1. Choose the chairperson. Focus on the topics to make reports or presentations.

2. Use the Internet resources.

3. What do the UN and UN related agencies do through the history in the context of human trafficking?

4. How doe does the RF, the UK, the USA legislation counter this phenomenon?

5. In conclusion make a resolution to summarize different opinions on what measures shall be taken by international community to combat human trafficking.

**8. Read the following proverbs. If possible find Russian equivalents. When are they used?**

1. The pen is mightier than the sword.

2. People who live in a glass house should not throw stones.

3. Hope for the best, but prepare for the worst.

4. Birds of a feather flock together.

5. Keep your friends close and your enemies closer.

6. You can’t make an omelet without breaking a few eggs.

7. Actions speak louder than words.

8. When in Rome do as the Romans.

9. If you are not a part of the solution you are a part of the problem.

10. One man’s trash is another man’s treasure.

11. Grass is always greener on the other side of the hill.

12. You can lead a horse to water, but you can’t make it drink.

13. All is fair in love and war.

**9.** **Read John Donne’s poem and its translation.** **Write an essay on the priorities of human values.**

[John Donne](http://www.poemhunter.com/john-donne/poems/)

No man is an island,

Entire of itself,

Every man is a piece of the continent,

A part of the main.

If a clod be washed away by the sea,

Europe is the less.

As well as if a promontory were.

As well as if a manor of thy friend's

Or of thine own were:

Any man's death diminishes me,

Because I am involved in mankind,

And therefore never send to know for whom the bell tolls;

It tolls for thee.

Джон Донн.

«Нет человека, который был бы как Остров, сам по себе, каждый человек есть часть Материка, часть Суши; и если волной снесёт в море береговой Утёс, меньше станет Европа, и так же, если смоет край мыса или разрушит Замок твой или друга твоего; смерть каждого Человека умаляет и меня, ибо я един со всем Человечеством, а потому не спрашивай, по ком звонит колокол: он звонит по Тебе».

**GLOSSARY**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| to affect | влиять, воздействовать |
| affective | влиятельный |
| antitrust | антитрестовский, антимонопольный |
| arms trafficking | контрабанда оружия |
| to be sexually exploited in exchange for something | использоваться для предоставления  сексуальных услуг в обмен на что-то |
| bedrock | основной, краеугольный |
| bid rigging | сговор на торгах, торги |
| bookkeeping | бухгалтерский учет |
| to cause mass political or military atrocities | вызывать (быть причиной) массовых политических и военных злодеяний |
| child- soldier | ребенок – солдат |
| collusion | преступный сговор, пособничество |
| competitive | конкурентный, конкурентноспособный |
| to complement national judicial systems | дополнять национальную судебную систему |
| to complement existing national judicial systems | дополнить существующие юридические системы |
| conspiracy | заговор, сговор |
| contingency | чрезвычайный, непредвиденный |
| counterfeiting | подделка документов, выпуск контрафактной продукции, фальшивомонетничество |
| credit card fraud | мошенничество с кредитными карточками |
| crime prevention strategy | cтратегия предотвращения преступления |
| crimes against humanity | преступления против человечества |
| crimes of aggression | преступления агрессии |
| cronyism | кумовство, блат |
| database of the world wanted criminals | база данных разыскиваемых преступников |
| denial of medical treatment | лишение медицинской помощи |
| disturbances | волнения |
| DNA profiles and fingerprinting | анализ ДНК и снятие отпечатков пальцев |
| drug trafficking | торговля наркотиками |
| economic integrity and political stability | экономическая и политическая стабильность |
| to eliminate racial discrimination | исключить расовую дискриминацию |
| to enforce international law | обеспечивать соблюдение международного права |
| to escape across a border | скрыться за границей |
| to exercise jurisdiction | осуществлять юрисдикцию |
| to exploit | использовать, эксплуатировать, пользоваться |
| exploitation in spheres of production or service | эксплуатация в сфере производства и услуг |
| gang traffickers | торговля, которая осуществляется специально созданной группой людей |
| global market | мировой рынок |
| graft | взяточничество |
| human illegal exploitation | незаконная эксплуатация людей |
| human trafficking | незаконная продажа или перепродажа, торговля людьми |
| humiliation or degradation of human beings | унижение и деградация людей |
| immigrant | человек, приезжающий в страну на жительство |
| impact on socio-economic development | влияние на социально-экономическое развитие |
| to impose measures | налагать меры |
| indignities | унижение, оскорбление, пренебрежение |
| international investigation and subsequent extradition | международное расследование с последующей экстрадицией |
| juvenile delinquency | подростковая преступность |
| kleptocracy | клептократия, кредиторы |
| merchandise | товар |
| merchandise | торговать |
| merger | слияние, объединение |
| migrant | мигрант, переселенец |
| to migrate | мигрировать, перемещаться |
| money laundering | отмывание денег |
| pimp | сутенер, сводник |
| nepotism | протекция, семейственность |
| organ trafficking | незаконная продажа человеческих органов |
| penologist | пенолог |
| people most affected by | люди наиболее подверженные влиянию |
| people smuggling | незаконный ввоз рабочей силы |
| to pimp | cводничать, быть организатором сексуальной эксплуатации |
| pimping | сводничество. |
| preparation for committing an offence | подготовка для совершения правонарушения |
| to promote v the observance of international standards and norms in criminal justice | содействовать соблюдению международных стандартов и норм уголовного правосудия |
| to pronounce judgment | выносить судебное решение |
| to restore dignity | возвращать достоинство |
| sex trafficking | незаконная продажа людей с целью проституции или другой формы сексуальной эксплуатации |
| slave labor | рабский труд |
| slave trade | работорговля |
| to tackle drug trafficking and organized crime | бороться с торговлей наркотиками и организованной преступностью |
| the conscience of mankind | совесть человечества |
| through force, fraud, coercion | с помощью силы, обмана, принуждения, |
| through unlawful recruitment | с помощью (путем) незаконного найма |
| traffickers | торговцы незаконным товаром |
| use of child-soldiers | использование любого ребенка (мальчика или девочки) моложе восемнадцати лет, который является частью какой-либо регулярной или нерегулярной вооруженной силы или вооруженной группы в любом качестве |
| vigor | рвение, энтузиазм |
| vulnerability | уязвимость |
| vulnerability of people facing recruiters | уязвимость людей, сталкивающихся с вербовщиками |
| vulnerable social groups | наиболее уязвимые социальные группы |
| who turned humans into merchandise | кто превратил людей в товар |
| within domestic jurisdiction | в пределах внутригосударственной юрисдикции |

**Chapter 12**

**TERRORISM - THE GLOBAL PROBLEM**

**UNIT 1**

Lead-in

Terrorism is one of the greatest evils of the modern world. It is recognized as an international crime.

**1. How do you think which of the following international crimes pose the gravest threat to international security?**

Give your reasoning.

* Genocide
* Drug trafficking
* Trafficking in arms, human beings, organs
* Corruption
* Organized crime
* Terrorism

**2. Read the opinion of a journalist. If necessary consult the dictionary. Agree or disagree with his point of view. Give your arguments.**

To solve the problem of global terrorism, we must try to find the roots of it, to analyze the actions of countries taken against terrorism. Mass media leads active struggle against terrorism but very often this process isn't connected with well-known terrorists. They blame whole nations without any division. The consequences of such actions are predictable: people begin to hate not terrorists as a whole but correlate terrorists with definite nationalities, Arabic, for example.

Terrorism as a national phenomenon is a great problem and its understanding can help us to find the way out. Terrorism needs serious and responsible public attitude, but sometimes hiding after the generous aims of the liquidation of terrorism, politicians limited civil liberties of some nationalities. Internet sites and mass media can abuse position of some social and ethnic groups and give false information about them. All these and many other facts only promote terrorism. Aggressive attitude to the Arabic people and their religion causes fits of anger in Arabic countries and can even lead to acts of terrorism. To avoid these national hatred we must get aquatinted with Arabic culture, traditions and religion, to understand that not all people in these countries support terrorism and that their religion doesn't propagate to kill people of other religions.

So, the first step is to take under rigid control mass media and Internet. Information about terrorism and terrorists must be objective and factual. Real facts are necessary for the correct understanding of the situation. Then it's necessary to give children and teenagers the real facts as they represent the future generation to rule the country. Subjective understanding of the matter should be minimized as subjective opinion causes emotional reaction while to solve this problem we must be guided only by common sense. To blame Islam in the existence of terrorism and to consider all Arabic people terrorists is silly and nonsensical. The name Islam means "peace" translated from the Arabic language. Examining Arabic Belief system we find that aggressive actions have no place in it.

Terrorism being a global problem needs special attention and careful attitude. Exploring the roots of this phenomenon is necessary to find ways out. A special organization must be created. Its main aim would be to inform population about all acts of terror, to make them aquatinted with Arabic and other cultures whose representatives have been terrorists, to get rid of national hatred. This organization would spend special meetings in colleges, universities and at schools where global problems could be discussed. It would form objective independent opinion that would help people to get together and overcome this trouble that endanger all lives.

**Text 1**

**Terrorism. Classification of Terrorism**

**Vocabulary**

1. a holy duty – священная обязанность

2. preemption – нанесение упреждающего удара

3. coercive power – силовые методы принуждения

4. to mistake terrorism for criminal activity – считать терроризм преступной деятельностью

5. nebulous concept – расплывчатое (неясное) понятие

6. beyond the immediate victim – помимо непосредственной жертвы

7. legitimate combatants – участники законных вооруженных формирований

8. with no regard for human life – не принимая во внимание жизнь людей

9. an integral part of psychological warfare – неотъемлемая часть психологических методов ведения войны

10. to carry on a conflict without adversary realizing the nature of the threat – принимать участие в конфликте, когда противник не осознает реальную угрозу

**1. Read the text and answer the questions.**

- How is terrorism described through history?

- What is “asymmetric form of conflict”?

- What is the modern description of terrorism?

- Why is preemption considered to be so important?

- What are the perspectives of terrorism?

Terrorism is not new, and even though it has been used since the beginning of recorded history it can be relatively hard to define. Terrorism has been described variously as both a tactic and strategy; a crime and a holy duty; a justified reaction to oppression and an inexcusable abomination. Obviously, a lot depends on whose point of view is being represented. Terrorism has often been an effective tactic for the weaker side in a conflict. As an asymmetric form of conflict, it confers coercive power with many of the advantages of military force at a fraction of the cost. Due to the secretive nature and small size of terrorist organizations, they often offer opponents no clear organization to defend against or to deter. That is why preemption is being considered to be so important. In some cases, terrorism has been a means to carry on a conflict without adversary realizing the nature of the threat, mistaking terrorism for criminal activity. Because of these characteristics, terrorism has become increasingly common among those pursuing extreme goals throughout the world. But despite its popularity, terrorism can be a nebulous concept.

Terrorism is a criminal act that influences an audience beyond the immediate victim. The strategy of terrorists is to commit acts of violence that draws the attention of the local populace, the government, and the world to their cause. The terrorists plan their attack to obtain the greatest publicity, choosing targets that symbolize what they oppose. The effectiveness of the terrorist act lies not in the act itself, but in the public’s or government’s reaction to the act. For example, in 1972 at the Munich Olympics, the Black September Organization killed 11 Israelis. The Israelis were the immediate victims. But the true target was the estimated 1 billion people watching the televised event.

There are three perspectives of terrorism: the terrorist’s, the victim’s, and the general public’s. The phrase “one man’s terrorist is another man’s freedom fighter” is a view terrorists themselves would accept. Terrorists do not see themselves as evil. They believe they are legitimate combatants, fighting for what they believe in, by whatever means possible. A victim of a terrorist act sees the terrorist as a criminal with no regard for human life. The general public’s view is the most unstable. The terrorists take great pains to foster a “Robin Hood” image in hope of swaying the general public’s point of view toward their cause. This sympathetic view of terrorism has become an integral part of their psychological warfare and needs to be countered vigorously.

**2. Give Russian equivalents to the English word combinations.**

1. to commit acts of violence

2. inexcusable abomination

3. secretive nature

4. to confer coercive power

5. to take great pains

6. to counter vigorously

**3. Find in the text English equivalents to the Russian word combinations.**

1. при наименьших затратах

2. преимущества военной силы

3. преследовать крайние цели

4. оказать влияние на мнение общественности

5. поддерживать образ Робин Гуда

6. психологические методы ведения войны

**4. Complete the text using the appropriate forms of the words from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| Harm, civil, defense, terror, politics, govern, exist |

Terrorism is a term used to describe violence or other \_\_\_1\_\_\_acts committed against \_\_\_2\_\_\_ by groups or persons for political or other ideological goals. Most \_\_\_\_3\_\_\_\_of \_\_\_\_4\_\_\_\_ include only those acts which are intended to create fear or “terror”, are perpetrated for a \_\_\_\_5\_\_\_\_ goal, deliberately target “noncombatants”. Terrorism is sometimes used when attempting to force political change by: convincing a \_\_\_\_\_6\_\_\_\_\_or population to agree to demands to avoid future harm or fear of harm, destabilization of an \_\_\_\_7\_\_\_\_ government, motivating a disgruntled population to join an uprising, escalating a conflict in the hopes of disrupting the status quo.

**5. Complete the table with nouns using the appropriate noun forming suffixes (there might be more than one per verb). Translate the nouns into Russian.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Verb | Noun |
| To justify | justification |
| To oppress |  |
| To abominate |  |
| To represent |  |
| To organize |  |
| To preempt |  |
| To commit |  |
| To oppose |  |
| To react |  |
| To estimate |  |

**6. Match the words from the text with their definitions. Use them in the sentences of your own.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Abomination | a) someone who fights against or opposes another, an enemy |
| 2. Perspective | b) a [person](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/person) who [disagrees](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/disagree) with something and [speaks](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/speak) against it or tries to [change](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/change) it |
| 3. Oppression | c) the [activity](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/activity) of [fighting](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/fighting) a [war](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/war), often [including](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/including) the [weapons](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/weapon) and [methods](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/method) that are used |
| 4. Cause | d) to [react](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/react) to something with an [opposing](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/opposing) [opinion](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/opinion) or [action](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/action), or to [defend](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/defend) yourself against something |
| 5. Warfare | e) a [particular](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/particular) way of [considering](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/considering) something |
| 6. To foster | f) a [situation](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/situation) in which [people](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/people) are [governed](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/govern) in an [unfair](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/unfair) and [cruel](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/cruel) way |
| 7. Preemption | g) a [socially](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/socially) [valuable](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/valuable) [principle](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/principle) that is [strongly](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/strongly) [supported](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/support) by some [people](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/people) |
| 8. Opponent | h) something regarded with disgust or hatred |
| 9. To counter | i) a policy of launching a [preemptive](https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/preemptive) attack in order to prevent a suspected imminent attack |
| 10. Adversary | j) to promote the growth or development of something, further, encourage |

**7. Match types of terrorism with their descriptions.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Political terrorism | a) Terrorism is an activity planned and intended to achieve particular goals. It is a rationally employed, specifically selected tactic, and is not a random act. Since the victims of terrorist violence are often of little import, with one being as good for the terrorists' purposes as another, victim or target selection can appear random or unprovoked. But the target will contain symbolic value or be capable of eliciting emotional response according to the terrorists' goals. Remember that the actual target of terrorism is not the victim of the violence, but the psychological balance. |
| 2. Psychological terrorism | b) A terrorist act is a political act or is committed with the intention to cause a political effect. Clausewitz' statement that "war is a continuation of policy by other means" is taken as a truism by terrorists. They merely eliminate the intermediate step of armies and warfare, and apply violence directly to the political contest. |
| 3. Coercive terrorism | c) Terrorist groups demand change, revolution, or political movement. The radical worldview that justifies terrorism mandates drastic action to destroy or alter the status quo. Even if the goals of a movement are reactionary in nature, they require action to “turn back the clock” or restore some cherished value system that is extinct. Nobody commits violent attacks on strangers or innocents to keep things “just the way they are.” |
| 4. Dynamic terrorism | d) Violence and destruction are used in the commission of the act to produce the desired effect. Even if casualties or destruction are not the result of a terrorist operation, the threat or potential of violence is what produces the intended effect. For example, a successful hostage taking operation may result in all hostages being freed unharmed after negotiations and bargaining. Regardless of the outcome, the terrorist bargaining chips were nothing less than the raw threat of applying violence to maim or kill some or all of the hostages. When the threat of violence is not credible, or the terrorists are unable to implement violence effectively, terrorism fails. |
| 5. Deliberate terrorism | e) The intended results of terrorist acts cause a psychological effect ("terror"). They are aimed at a target audience other than the actual victims of the act. The intended target audience of the terrorist act may be the population as a whole, some specific portion of a society (an ethnic minority, for example), or decision-making elites in the society's political, social, or military populace. |

**8. Write out a key phrase to identify each type of terrorism. Are there any other classifications of terrorism?**

**9. Skim the following text. Match the headlines with appropriate paragraphs.**

1. From the History of Terrorism

2. Present day of Terrorism

3. Weapons

a) As we know, a terrorist act can include two, three or more traditional crimes: bombing, murder, kidnapping, taking a hostage, extortion and hijacking, etc. These crimes are usually committed by well-armed and prepared groups. The usual weapons of terrorists from the 1960s to the 1980s were guns, knives, poison gas and car bombs. The ease of intercontinental transportation enables modern terrorist organisations to more easily acquire, manufacture, and deploy chemical, biological, radiological, or nuclear weapon, or high-yield explosives. While new instruments of terror such as cyber attacks are on the rise, explosives and bioterrorism (e.g. the Aum Shinrikyo's efforts to deploy biological weapons and the lethal sarin gas attack in the Tokyo subway in 1995, the contaminated letters in the USA in 2001) have become the urgent problem for the international community.

b) Today's terrorist activity is different from that of the past. Modern technology, advanced telecommunications and new Weapons of Mass Destruction (WMD) have changed the nature of terrorism. Nowadays terrorist organizations have a flexible, transnational structure. They work together in funding, sharing intelligence, training, planning, and executing attacks. Terrorist groups in one country or region can draw strength and support from groups in other countries or regions. As the аl Qaida network demonstrates, this multinational enterprise has its branches in more than 60 countries. Its global activities are co-ordinated through the use of personal couriers and communication technologies - cellular and satellite phones, e-mail, internet chat rooms, videotape. Members of terrorist groups travel from continent to continent with the ease of a vacationer or business traveller. They pay their way with funds raised through drug trafficking, credit card fraud, extortion, and money; from covert supporters. They use charitable organizations and nongovernmental organizations for funding and recruitment. Money for their operations is transferred through numerous banks, money exchanges. The terrorist organizations structure, membership, resources (safe houses, training grounds, reliable communication and financial networks) and security determine its capabilities and reach.

c) The roots of terrorism are in the activities of racial and religious fanatics in the 1930s. Many terrorist movements arose in the 1960s as a part of the world-wide student protest against US participation in the Vietnam War. They started with non-lethal activities - demonstrations, occasional arsons or sabotage. Later terrorist tactics were frequently employed and “improved” by racist groups as the Ku Klux Klan and religious and nationalist groups like the Hezbollah (“the army of God”), the Palestine Liberation Front, Red Brigades in Italy, Irish Republican Army, etc. The bloodiest operations have been carried out by Arab and Palestinian terrorists since the 1970s: the massacre of 11 Israeli athletes at the Munich Olympics in 1972, more than 60 bombings and hijacks. The hostages, victims and their targets for extortion were US and European citizens.

1. **Complete the table according to the text.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Crimes | Kinds of weapons | Means of coordination | The sources of financing |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |

**11. Work in groups of four. Discuss the answers to the following questions. Report to the class.**

- What are the peculiarities of terrorist activity nowadays?

- What has influenced terrorist activity?

**Text 2**

**Vocabulary**

1. a means of coercion – средство принуждения

2. to perpetrate for an ideological goal – совершать преступления с идеологической целью

3. deliberately target or disregard the safety of non-combatants (civilians) –умышленно ставить своей целью или игнорировать безопасность гражданского населения

4. to select terrorism for its political effectiveness – прибегать к

терроризм у с точки зрения его политической эффективности

5. a desire for social solidarity with other members of their organization – стремление к социальной солидарности с другими членами их организации

6. murky and undefined – смутный и неопределенный

7. use of violence against noncombatants – применение актов насилия против гражданского населения

8. collective violence interfering with the peace – коллективные акты насилия, препятствующие мирному процессу

9. to generate fear in the community – порождать страх в обществе

10. conscious design to create and maintain a high degree of fear for coercive purposes – осознанное решение вселять и нагнетать страх с целью применения методов принуждения

11. to induce terror – вызывать (порождать) ужас

12. to use the modalities and techniques of the genuine terrorist – использовать приемы и методы настоящих террористов

13. concerted campaign to capture control of the state – согласованные действия по установлению контроля над государством

14. pursuit of political objectives – достижение политических целей

**1. Read the text and answer the following questions.**

**-** What are the purposes of the US Task Force on Disorders and Terrorism?

- How is terrorism described by the Task Force on Disorders and Terrorism of the USA?

- What do common definitions of terrorism refer to?

- Why is it difficult to give a precise definition of terrorism?

- Why do terrorists use violence against non-combatants?

- How does the term “quasi-terrorism” differ from the term “terrorism”?

Terrorismis, in the most general sense, the systematic use of terror especially as a means of coercion. At present, the International community has been unable to formulate a universally agreed, legally binding, criminal law definition of terrorism. Common definitions of terrorism refer only to those violent acts which are intended to create fear (terror), are perpetrated for an ideological goal (as opposed to a lone attack), and deliberately target or disregard the safety of non-combatants (civilians).

Some definitions also include acts of unlawful violence and war. The history of terrorist organizations suggests that they do not select terrorism for its political effectiveness. Individual terrorists tend to be motivated more by a desire for social solidarity with other members of their organization than by political platforms or strategic objectives, which are often murky and undefined.

The word "terrorism" is politically and emotionally charged, and this greatly compounds the difficulty of providing a precise definition.

Terrorism has been practiced by a broad array of political organizations for furthering their objectives. It has been practiced by both right-wing and left-wing political parties, nationalistic groups, religious groups, revolutionaries, and ruling governments. One form is the use of violence against noncombatants for the purpose of gaining publicity for a group, cause, or individual.

The Task Force on Disorders and Terrorism of the USA classified terrorism into six categories.

* Civil disorder - A form of collective violence interfering with the peace, security, and normal functioning of the community.
* Political terrorism - Violent criminal behavior designed primarily to generate fear in the community, or substantial segment of it, for political purposes.
* Non-Political terrorism - Terrorism that is not aimed at political purposes but which exhibits “conscious design to create and maintain a high degree of fear for coercive purposes, but the end is individual or collective gain rather than the achievement of a political objective”.
* Quasi-terrorism - The activities incidental to the commission of crimes of violence that are similar in form and method to genuine terrorism but which nevertheless lack its essential ingredient. It is not the main purpose of the quasi-terrorists to induce terror in the immediate victim as in the case of genuine terrorism, but the quasi-terrorist uses the modalities and techniques of the genuine terrorist and produces similar consequences and reaction. For example, the fleeing felon who takes hostages is a quasi-terrorist, whose methods are similar to those of the genuine terrorist but whose purposes are quite different.
* Limited political terrorism - Genuine political terrorism is characterized by a revolutionary approach; limited political terrorism refers to "acts of terrorism which are committed for ideological or political motives but which are not part of a concerted campaign to capture control of the state".

• Official or state terrorism -"referring to nations whose rule is based upon fear and oppression that reach similar to terrorism or such proportions." It may also be referred to as Structural Terrorism defined broadly as terrorist acts carried out by governments in pursuit of political objectives, often as part of their foreign policy.

**2. Title the text.**

**3.Find in the text English equivalents to the Russian word combinations.**

1. иметь политическую и эмоциональную окраску

2. связанный с совершением преступления

3. способствовать достижению целей

4. юридически обязательный

5. Целевая группа по борьбе с терроризмом (осуществлению контртеррористических мероприятий)

6. захват заложников

7. сбежавший преступник

8. средства принуждения

9. приемы и методы настоящих террористов

10. предать гласности

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the Russian “для достижения … целей”.**

**5. Fill in the table with -ing forms of the verbs. Identify whether these forms refer to Gerund or Participle I. Translate the verbs and -ing forms into Russian.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Verb** | -**Ing form** |
| to rule | ruling |
| to bind |  |
| to provide |  |
| to interfere |  |
| to gain |  |
| to further |  |
| to function |  |
| to refer |  |

**6. Using the text make collocations. Translate them into Russian. Use them in the sentences (stories) of your own.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. to base upon | a. the safety of non-combatants |
| 2. to refer to | b. the high degree of fear |
| 3. to disregard | c. violent acts |
| 4. to further | d. fear and oppression |
| 5. to interfere with | e. essential ingredient |
| 6. to lack | f. publicity |
| 7. to maintain | g. objectives |
| 8. to gain | h. the peace, security |

**Text 3**

**Terms for Describing Terrorism**

**1. Read the text. In groups of four compile a glossary to describe terrorism as a phenomenon.**

*Lynn Visson*

Since in today’s world newspapers, radio and television programs around the globe are all too often filled with accounts of terrorist attacks, suicide bombings and other such horrific acts, the Russian-English/ English- Russian translator or interpreter is well advised to have a variety of synonyms in his active linguistic baggage. "Shocking," a word commonly used to describe terrorist acts, can be supplemented or replaced by a wide variety of negative adjectives such as "abominable" *(отвратительный),* "appalling" *(жуткий),* "atrocious" *(зверский, гнусный),* "brutal" *(жестокий),* "frightful" *(ужасный, страшный),* "hateful" *(ненавистный),* "heinous" *(омерзительный),* "hideous" *(безобразный),* "horrible" *(ужасный),* "monstrous" *(чудовищный),* "obnoxious" *(противный, несносный),* "odious" *(ненавистный, противный),* "outrageous" *(безобразный, возмутительный),* "repugnant," *(отвратительный),* "repulsive" *(отталкивающий),* "sickening" *(тошнотворный),* "terrible" *(страшный, ужасный),* "vile" *(гнусный).* Another useful word is "unspeakable" — "unspeakable acts" imply actions so awful that one is loath to even talk of them. These deeds may also be "brazen" *(дерзкие).* A common Russian adjective describing such acts is *коварный,* as *коварная изощренность террористов.*

While the dictionary defines *коварный* as "treacherous" or "perfidious," in many contexts these may not be appropriate translations. In the given phrase, "the insidious" or "fiendish" sophistication of the terrorists would successfully render the phrase’s meaning.

"Reprehensible" implies something which is both *предосудительный* and *отвратительный* — "revolting". "Disgusting" is somewhat too colloquial for such situations. And the correct adjective to render *варварский* is "barbaric," not "barbarian," as in "barbaric bombings" or "the barbaric and sick individuals who committed these acts".

The individual who carries out such acts is the "perpetrator", and he "commits", "carries out" or "perpetrates" his evil deeds. The individuals who order him to do so, *заказчики* or *зачинщики* are the "masterminds", "ringleaders" or "instigators" of violence. While the word *бандиты* often comes up in reference to terrorists, the English word "bandits" should be avoided. A far better translation is "thug;" the *пособники* or *приспешники* of terrorists are their "henchmen," "accomplices," or "those who aid and abet terrorists." *Преступные банды террористов* is better translated as "criminal gangs" than as "bands." Но *дело* ("cause") can justify the actions of any *заблудившиеся* ("misguided", "deluded") individuals, would-be martyrs *(мученики)* or fanatics.

While *сильный и беспощадный враг,* as terrorists are often called, can be translated as "a strong and merciless enemy," "ruthless" is a more idiomatic translation of *беспощадный,* and а very useful word to describe someone who has no scruples/moral principles/will stop at nothing/will not shrink/shirk from perpetrating any kind of terrorist act.

*Вопрос о дальнейшей активизации и повышении сотрудничества в борьбе с терроризмом* is the "vitally", "critically important" or "crucial" issue of the continuous/continued further revitalization ("activization" is not a good choice here) of effective cooperation in combating terrorism. *Борьба с терроризмом* can be rendered in several ways: the war on terrorism/campaign against terrorism/ struggle/fight against terrorism. And *решение приоритетной задачи борьбы с терроризмом* can be rendered as "the high(est) priority objective of resolving (not solving!) the challenge/issue/problem of the fight/ struggle against terrorism."

*Террористические акты,* потрясшие мир, are acts which "shocked," "stunned", "rocked", or "convulsed" the world, or "made the world reel". While *террористические очаги* are often translated as "hotbeds" or "flashpoints" of terrorism, in some contexts these can be "strongholds" or "bastions".

We often hear about the *главное условие успеха* — "the key to" or "prerequisite for" success in the war on terrorism. Враг — "enemy/adversary/opponent" — *далеко не сломлен —* "has by no means/has not yet been defeated/conquered/smashed". The forces of evil *рвутся к обладанию оружием массового уничтожения* — "are (desperately) trying/eager/out/to acquire weapons of mass destruction". There are also *многочисленные неопровержимые доказательства —* "a great deal of/a plethora of/ incontrovertible/irrefutable evidence" regarding terrorist activities.

*Терроризм нужно полностью искоренить/ликвидировать* can be translated as "Terrorism must be eliminated/destroyed/wiped out/ended". This also requires putting an end to its *питательная среда,* or "breeding grounds." *Совместные усилия* — "joint" or "common" efforts are needed to defeat the terrorists, and those involved in this struggle must "pool" or "unite" (not "share") their efforts. What is required is a *комплексный подход к противодействию терроризму.* Better than a "comprehensive" approach would be "multipronged" or "multifaceted." Also needed are *решительные, сплоченные и выверенные действия международного сообщества —* "vigorous/ resolute (much better than "firm"), united and considered actions on the part of the international community."

*Использование методов террора ставит крест на политических амбициях тех, кто этим занимается, однозначно превращает их в преступников и подлинных изгоев. Не может быть никакого оправдания их действиям. И сами мы должны действовать в отношении их соответственно: преступники обязаны нести наказание за содеянное.*

The translator here is presented with plenty of interesting possibilities. The use of terror can either "doom" or "put an end to" the political "strivings" (better than "ambitions") of those engaged/involved in terrorism, and ("and" is necessary in English!) clearly/unequivocally/stamps/marks/brands them as criminals and utter/absolute pariahs/the lowest of the low/places them beyond the pale. There can be no justification (whatever) for their actions. And we must take appropriate action against them: the criminals must be punished/ punishment must be meted out for their actions (or, much better) — for what they have wrought. In other words, they cannot be allowed to act *безнаказанно —* "with impunity." Terrorists must not be allowed to *уйти от правосудия —* "to escape from justice".

Those who *укрывают террористов,* "harbor/give refuge" to terrorists must also be punished. All those who are fighting terrorism must *питать надежду* — "harbor/cherish the hope" that terrorism will be eliminated.

And the translator/interpreter must take care to keep abreast of the growing vocabulary of political, military and humanitarian terminology so frequently used in discussion of this scourge of the twenty-first century.

**2. Present your glossary in the class. Compare it with those of your partners.**

**UNIT 2**

**Lead-in**

**What are well-known sources of financing terrorism?**

**Text 1**

**The Financing of Terrorism:**

**Sources, Methods, Channels, Organizations, Sponsorship**

**Vocabulary**

1. to be nefarious – быть бесчестным

2. a conduit for the money – канал для движения денежных средств

3. the flow of money on which they ride – денежный поток, с помощью которого террористы получают прибыль

4. to stem at the source – перекрыть (канал поступления денег) у самого источника

5. stringent financial procedures and controls – жесткие финансовые процедуры и меры контроля

6. to operate a hawala system from a back of a store – использовать неофициальные каналы для перевода денежных средств

7. criminal endeavor – покушение на преступление

8. a good measure of sophistication – высокая степень изощренности преступников

9. to become a matter of serious concern – стать предметом особой важности

10. to trace, intercept and prevent acts of terrorism – отслеживать, пресекать и предупреждать террористичечские акты (проводить оперативно-розыскные мероприятия по предотвращению террористических актов)

11. abundant resources – достаточные (неограниченные) финансовые средства

12. funding constraints – ограничения в финансировании

13. to be not feasible – быть невыполнимым

14. to breed religious intolerance –порождать религиозную нетерпимость

**1. Read the text. What are the main sources of financing terrorism?**

**2. Divide the text into 3 logical parts and define the main idea of each part.**

Terrorism has global reach in its activities and in its sources of funding. There are manifold sources operating through methods that may be legal or illegal and sometimes even nefarious, and through routes that are often circuitous. Indeed, so-called charitable organizations are often used as a front to mobilize funds or serve as a conduit for the money. It is clear that if acts of terrorism are to be eliminated, the flow of money on which they ride must be stemmed at the source. This is one area in which stringent financial procedures and controls could be helpful. Equally important is the control that central banks must exercise in the financial sector, and the banking system in particular, to ensure greater accountability and better record keeping. Realistically, however, as long there is someone who operates a hawala system from a back of a store, money will keep flowing. No less important is the cooperation between countries and the enforcement of international conventions. A recent article on the transfer of money in Dubai notes that the authorities counted 429 suspicious money transfer operations between August 2001 and May 2003. Of these, only 46 cases were thoroughly investigated because there was little support from other countries involved, including Britain, Switzerland and the United States. Finally, education systems that teach jihad (holy war) as the highest calling for the individual and breed religious intolerance must be reformed. The financing of terrorism is a subterranean universe governed by secrecy, subterfuge, and criminal endeavors; but also a good measure of sophistication and an understanding of the global financial system. It is best described as octopus with tentacles spreading across vast territories as well as across a wide range of religious, social, economic and political realities. Shutting the flow of money to terrorist organizations will require international cooperation at all levels, and the results will be far from certain. Money is the engine that drives terrorist acts, and it is not surprising that the financing of terrorism has become a matter of serious concern for those responsible for tracing, intercepting and, if possible, preventing acts of terrorism. The events of September 11 have heightened this concern. According to Interpol, the international police organization, 'the frequency and seriousness of international terrorist acts are often proportionate to the financing that terrorist groups might get.' The September 11 attack, with its complex planning, preparation and execution, would not have been possible without abundant resources. On the other hand, funding constraints have often limited the scope of an attack. One case was the bombing of the Egyptian embassy in Islamabad, Pakistan. According to Ayman al-Zawahiri, Osama bin Laden's right hand, his group wanted to take revenge for the 'evil alliance' between Egypt and the United States. Their first choice of target was the American Embassy in Islamabad; if bombing that targetwas not feasible**,** their second choice was 'a Western embassy famous for its historic hatred for Muslims'; their third choice was the Egyptian embassy. In the end, funding was the deciding factor. In the words of al-Zawahiri: A short time before the bombing of the Egyptian embassy the assigned group told us that they could strike both the Egyptian and American embassies if we gave them enough money. We had already provided them with all that we had and we couldn't collect more money. So the group focused on bombing the Egyptian embassy. In another case, Ramzi Yusef, the convicted mastermind behind the 1993 bombing of the World Trade Center admitted that, due to the shortage of funds, the terrorists were unable to build as large a bomb as they had intended.

**3. Write out from the text word combinations containing the word “money” to describe the financing of terrorist acts. What other words and word combinations can you suggest.**

**4. Answer six “what” questions.**

1. What is the nature of sources operating through methods of terrorist acts?

2. What is used to mobilize funds as a channel for the money?

3. What is necessary to undertake to stop the flow of money?

4. What must be changed to decrease religious influence?

5. What is the issue of serious concern for counter-terrorism organizations?

6. What are well-known sources of financing of terrorism?

**5. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. There are manifold sources operating through models that may be legal or illegal.

2. It is clear that if act of terrorism are to be eliminated, finances on which they ride must be stemmed at the very beginning.

3. No less important is the cooperation between countries and the enforcement of international conventions.

4. The financing of terrorism is subterranean union governed by secrecy.

5. Money is the engine that drives terrorist acts.

6. According to Interpol, the European police organization, the frequency and seriousness of international terrorist acts are often proportionate to the financing that terrorist groups might get.

**6. Find in the text synonyms to the following words. Write out collocations with the synonyms.**

Huge, agreement, to implement, complicated, various, dishonorable, indirect, to guarantee, useful, strict, assistance, questionable, deficit, to eradicate.

**7. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents. Use these word combinations in the sentences of your own.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. convicted mastermind | a. операции по переводу подозрительных денежных сумм |
| 2. enforcement of international conventions | b. мстить, отомстить за что-то |
| 3. record keeping | c. перекрыть денежный поток |
| 4. global reach | d. обеспечение выполнения международных конвенций недостаток денежных средств |
| 5. a back of a store | e. осужденный идейный вдохновитель |
| 6. sources of funding | f. недостаток денежных средств |
| 7. shut the flow of money | g. глобальный характер |
| 8. shortage of funds | h. ведение учета |
| 9. take revenge for something | i. неофициальный канал информации |
| 10. suspicious money transfer operation | j. источники финансирования |

**8. Match the words from the text with their descriptions (definitions).**

**Translate them into Russian.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. accountability | a. an effort to do or attain something |
| 2. to drive | b. a [trick](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/trick) or a [dishonest](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/dishonest) way of [achieving](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/achieve) something |
| 3. concern | c. to [stop](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/stop) something [unwanted](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/unwanted) from [spreading](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/spread) or [increasing](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/increase) |
| 4. to stem | d. giving [money](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/money), [food](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/food), or [help](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/help) [free](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/free) to those who are in need because they are [ill](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/ill), [poor](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/poor), or have no [home](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/home) |
| 5. funding | e. a [situation](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/situation) in which someone is [responsible](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/responsible) for things that [happen](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/happen) and can give a [satisfactory](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/satisfactory) reason for them |
| 6. endeavor | f. [money](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/money) given by a [government](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/government) or [organization](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/organization) for an [event](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/event) or [activity](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/activity) |
| 7. to eliminate | i. a traditional system of transferring money used in Arab countries and South Asia, whereby the money is paid to an agent who then instructs an associate in the relevant country or area to pay the final recipient |
| 8. subterfuge | g. something that affects or is of importance to a person; affair; business |
| 9. charity | k. to remove or take out; get rid of |
| 10. hawala | l. to [force](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/force) someone or something into a [particular](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/particular) [state](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/state), often an [unpleasant](http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/unpleasant) one |

**9. Make the summary of the text. Report to the class.**

**Text 2**

**Definition of funds for terrorism**

**Vocabulary**

1. tangible or intangible, movable or immovable – материальное или нематериальное, движимое или недвижимое

2. a global reach both in terms of activities and in terms of its sources of funding – широкое распространение на международном уровне как деятельности, так и источника финансирования

3. definitely relevant – непосредственно связанное с чем-либо

4. a war of weaponry and solicitors' – противостояние средств вооружений и права

5. commingle legitimate with illegitimate sources of funding – сочетать законные и незаконные источники финансирования

6. forging passports, smuggling militant Muslims and asylum seekers into Germany – подделка паспортов, незаконное проникновение в Германию мусульманских боевиков и беженцев

**1. Read the text. Translate it.**

1999 the International Convention for the Suppression of the Financing of Terrorism defines funds for terrorism to mean assets of every kind, whether tangible or intangible, movable or immovable, however acquired, and legal documents or instruments in any form, including electronic or digital, evidencing title to, or interest in, such assets, including, but not limited to, bank credits, travelers checks, money orders, shares, securities, bonds, drafts, letters of credit.

Terrorism today has a global reach both in terms of activities and in terms of its sources of funding. As the title of a recent article in the Wall Street Journal on the activities of one individual suspected of financing terrorism in Spain poignantly read: 'Mapping the Trail of Terror Money Proves Daunting.'

In response to US measures to freeze terrorist funds, the Al-Qaeda leader Osama bin Laden defiantly, and with a good measure of exaggeration, stated: 'By the grace of Allah, Al-Qaeda has more than three different alternative financial networks'. Al-Qaeda, he said, 'is being run around the world by well-educated young men. We do not have a few hundred or a few thousands but hundreds of thousands of highly educated young men who were well aware of these things and know the alternatives'.

Perhaps not in direct response, but definitely relevant, is the retort by the US Attorney General John Ashcroft who said: 'The war against terrorism is a war of accountants and auditors, as well as a war of weaponry and solicitors'.

The methods of raising funds often commingle legitimate with illegitimate sources of funding, the individual parts of the mix becoming not only untraceable to their source, but virtually indistinguishable from each other. On the one hand, funds may derive from legitimate charitable organizations but, on the other hand, funds may come from credit card fraud, smuggling, protection rackets, extortion, violation of intellectual property rights, and front businesses.

A former Al-Qaeda operative, Shadi Abdullah, a Jordanian national, admitted raising hundreds of thousands of dollars by forging passports, smuggling militant Muslims and asylum seekers into Germany and, most important, by fraudulently soliciting contributions for allegedly religious or humanitarian purposes.

**2. Answer the questions.**

1. What kinds of assets does the Convention define?

2. What do you think about the US Attorney General’ words?

3. What are the methods of raising funds?

**3. Give Russian equivalents to the following English terms:**

bank credits, travelers checks, money orders, shares, securities, bonds, drafts, letters of credit, credit card fraud, smuggling, protection rackets, extortion.

**4. Mapping the Trail of Terror Money Proves Daunting.' How do you understand this phrase? Consult the dictionary.**

**5. Define funds for terrorism.**

**Text 3**

**State Sponsored Terrorism**

**Vocabulary**

1. to exploit fear and terror- использовать страх и ужас

2. to equate any act of military force with terrorism – приравнивать любое применение военной силы к терроризму

3. to blur the lines – стирать границы

4. to elevate outcomes over intentions – приводить к ситуации, когда результаты первосходят ожидания

5. suppression of a riot – подавление мятежа

6. to aid in repressing dissent – содействовать подавлению инакомыслия

7. Stalin’s "purges" of the 1930s – сталинские “чистки” 1930-х годов

8. rigged show trials of opponents – жесткие показательные процессы над противниками

9.without any particular change or expansion of policies – без каких-либо изменений политического курса

10.to be expedient in accomplishing his goals – быть рациональным в достижении своих целей

11. to down airliners on international flights- сбивать самолеты международных авиалиний

12. death squads" or "war veterans" – отряды ветераны войны

13. to permits the authorities deniability – позволять властям оставаться безнаказанными

14. persons with no official standing and without official encouragement – лица без официального статуса и государственной поддержки

15. disavowal and punishment of the terrorists – обнаружение и наказание террористов

16. the provision of safe haven or physical basing for the terrorists' organization – предоставление безопасного убежища и средств базирования для террористической организации

17.immunity from extradition – ситуация, когда лицо не подлежит экстрадиции

18. diplomatic pouches to transport weapons or explosives – дипломатические каналы для доставки средств вооружений и взрывчатых веществ

19.more discreet scale – в более закрытом формате…

**1. Read the text. Match the jumbled headings with the paragraphs (A-F).**

1. Unofficial actions taken by officials or functionaries of a regime.

2. Government terrorizes its own population.

3. The provision of safe haven or physical basing for the terrorist organization.

4. The participation of states in terrorism.

5. Resort to violence by nations and states.

6. Terrorism under official sanction.

A) Is there a difference between terrorism and the use of specific tactics that exploit fear and terror by authorities normally considered "legitimate"? Nations and states often resort to violence to influence segments of their population, or rely on coercive aspects of state institutions. Just like the idea of equating any act of military force with terrorism described above, there are those who equate any use of government power or authority versus any part of the population as terrorism. This view also blurs the lines of what is and is not terrorism, as it elevates outcomes over intentions. Suppression of a riot by law enforcement personnel may in fact expose some of the population (the rioters) to violence and fear, but with the intent to protect the larger civil order. On the other hand, abuse of the prerogative of legitimized violence by the authorities is a crime.

B) But there are times when national governments will become involved in terrorism, or utilize terror to accomplish the objectives of governments or individual rulers. Most often, terrorism is equated with "non-state actors", or groups that are not responsible to a sovereign government. However, internal security forces can use terror to aid in repressing dissent, and intelligence or military organizations perform acts of terror designed to further a state's policy or diplomatic efforts abroad.

Three different ways that states can engage in the use of terror are:

* Governmental or "State" terror
* State involvement in terror
* State sponsorship of terrorism

C) Governmental or "State" terror. Sometimes referred to as "terror from above", where a government terrorizes its own population to control or repress them. These actions usually constitute the acknowledged policy of the government, and make use of official institutions such as the judiciary, police, military, and other government agencies. Changes to legal codes permit or encourage torture, killing, or property destruction in pursuit of government policy. After assuming power, official Nazi policy was aimed at the deliberate destruction of "state enemies" and the resulting intimidation of the rest of the population. Stalin’s "purges" of the 1930s are examples of using the machinery of the state to terrorize a population. The methods he used included such actions as rigged show trials of opponents, punishing family or friends of suspected enemies of the regime, and extra-legal use of police or military force against the population.

Saddam Hussein used chemical weapons on his own Kurdish population without any particular change or expansion of policies regarding the use of force on his own citizens. They were simply used in an act of governmental terror believed to be expedient in accomplishing his goals.

D) State involvement in terror. These are activities where government personnel carry out operations using terror tactics. These activities may be directed against other nations' interests, its own population, or private groups or individuals viewed as dangerous to the state. In many cases, these activities are terrorism under official sanction, although such authorization is rarely acknowledged openly. Historical examples include the Soviet and Iranian assassination campaigns against dissidents who had fled abroad, and Libyan and North Korean intelligence operatives downing airliners on international flights.

E) Another type of these activities is "death squads" or "war veterans": unofficial actions taken by officials or functionaries of a regime (such as members of police or intelligence organizations) against their own population to repress or intimidate. While these officials will not claim such activities, and disguise their participation, it is often made clear that they are acting for the state. Keeping such activities "unofficial" permits the authorities deniability and avoids the necessity of changing legal and judicial processes to justify oppression. This is different than "pro-state" terror, which is conducted by groups or persons with no official standing and without official encouragement. While pro-state terror may result in positive outcomes for the authorities, their employment of criminal methods and lack of official standing can result in disavowal and punishment of the terrorists, depending on the morality of the regime in question.

F) State sponsorship of terrorism. Also known as "state supported" terrorism, when governments provide supplies, training, and other forms of support to non-state terrorist organizations. One of the most valuable types of this support is the provision of safe haven or physical basing for the terrorists' organization. Another crucial service a state sponsor can provide is false documentation, not only for personal identification (passports, internal identification documents), but also for financial transactions and weapons purchases. Other means of support are access to training facilities and expertise not readily available to groups without extensive resources. Finally, the extension of diplomatic protections and services, such as immunity from extradition, diplomatic passports, use of embassies and other protected grounds, and diplomatic pouches to transport weapons or explosives have been significant to some groups.

An example of state sponsorship is the Syrian government's support of Hamas and Hizballah in Lebanon. Syrian resources and protection enable the huge training establishments in the Bek'aa Valley. On a smaller, more discreet scale, the East German Stasi provided support and safe-haven to members of the Red Army Faction (RAF or Baader Meinhof Gang) and neo-fascist groups that operated in West Germany. Wanted members of the RAF were found resident in East Germany after the fall of the Berlin Wall in 1989.

**2. Make a plan of the text. Render the text to your partner.**

**3. What are the reasons for the state to support terrorism? Write a short essay (10 sentences).**

**UNIT 3**

**Text 1**

**Global Action against Terrorism**

**Vocabulary**

1. to bring Member States to an acceptable level of compliance with the terrorism-related conventions and protocols – призвать страны-участницы к соблюдению конвенций и протоколов антитеррористической направленности

2. to mandate the General Assembly – наделить полномочиями Генеральную Ассамблею

3. to address the conditions conducive to the spread of terrorism – рассматривать условия, способствующие распространению терроризма

4. to build state capacity to fight terrorism – укреплять государственный потенциал в борьбе с терроризмом

**1. Read the text and identify organizations involved in combatting terrorism.**

Terrorism has been of concern to the international community since 1937 when the League of Nations elaborated the Convention for the Prevention and Punishment of Terrorism. Subsequently, the United Nations and other international and regional inter-governmental organizations have dealt with terrorism from a legal and political perspective.

Since 1963, the international community has elaborated universal legal instruments related to the prevention and suppression of international terrorism, which constitute the universal legal regime against terrorism.

In addition, the United Nations General Assembly and Security Council have adopted several resolutions pertaining to terrorism. In particular, and in response to the attacks of 11 September 2001, the Security Council adopted resolution 1373 (2001) on 28 September (2001) which declared that:

“...acts, methods and practices of terrorism are contrary to the purposes and principles of the United Nations”. It called upon Member States “to become parties as soon as possible to the relevant international conventions and protocols” and “to increase cooperation and fully implement the relevant international conventions and protocols”.

This resolution also established the Counter-Terrorism Committee (CTC) of the Security Council to monitor the implementation of the resolution by all States and increase the capability of States to fight terrorism, including bringing Member States to an acceptable level of compliance with the terrorism-related conventions and protocols. The CTC has since become the United Nations' leading body to promote collective action against international terrorism. In carrying out its functions, the Committee is supported by the Counter-Terrorism Committee Executive Directorate (CTED) (See also “Working closely with the Security Council’s CTC and CTED”.)

In the 2005 World Summit Outcome Document, the Heads of State and Government mandated the General Assembly to develop a counter-terrorism strategy to promote comprehensive and coordinated responses to one of humanity's major threats. In April 2006, the Secretary-General issued recommendations for a global counter-terrorism strategy (60/825), which led to the unanimous adoption by the General Assembly, on 8 September 2006, of the United Nations Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy (60/288). The strategy marks the first time that countries around the world agree on a common strategic approach to fight terrorism. The strategy contains a plan of action: to address the conditions conducive to the spread of terrorism; to prevent and combat terrorism; to take measures to build state capacity to fight terrorism and to strengthen the role of the United Nations in combating terrorism; and to ensure the respect of human rights while countering terrorism.

**2. Give Russian equivalents to the English word combinations.**

1. to monitor the implementation of the resolution

2. to promote collective action

3. to bring Member States to an acceptable level of compliancy

4. to implement the relevant international conventions and protocols

5. to ensure the respect of human rights

6. to increase the capability

7. United Nations Global Counter Terrorism Strategy

8. to elaborate universal legal instruments

9. the prevention and suppression of international terrorism

10. to issue recommendation

**3. Single out key phrases to report briefly on the counter-terrorism activity of international community.**

**4. Choose 5 counter-terrorism measures that are the most effective from your point of view. Discuss them with your group mates.**

Measures to be taken to stop people being radicalized and drawn into extremism and terrorism:

1. implement a new Counter-Extremism Strategy; counter extremist ideologies; build partnerships with all those opposed to extremism; disrupt extremists; and build more cohesive communities;

2. defend and promote the values which are the basis for a diverse, multi-racial, multi-faith society;

3. campaign for a more robust and effective international response to refute extremist ideology and propaganda, including through the UN Secretary General’s Action Plan on Preventing Violent Extremism;

4. continue to implement the statutory duty which means that all local authorities, schools, colleges, universities, , police, probation services and prisons have a specific legal responsibility to prevent radicalization;

5. expand the work with people who are at risk of radicalization and to stop them before they are engaged in any terrorist-related activity;

6. take action to investigate, disrupt and wherever possible convict terrorists; increase the resources for counter-terrorism police and the security and intelligence agencies to pursue terrorists;

7. provide capabilities to investigate terrorist activity online and to process large amounts of digital media quickly and effectively, upgrade counter-terrorism technology, including technical intelligence collection and digital forensic capability;

8. acquire intelligence and evidence from electronic communications; maximize security, while implementing strict safeguards to ensure that privacy is protected;

9. terrorism thrives in unstable states and amid civil wars. We need to be able to find and track terrorists in these hostile environments, where they pose a threat to the security of the country;

10. continue to invest in capabilities to protect ourselves against terrorist attack; invest in the protection of transport systems, notably aviation, borders, crowded places;

11. invest in developing new technologies to keep pace with evolving risks, and to help airports and airlines to screen out threats;

12. continue to train police, fire and ambulance personnel to work together when responding to major incidents, including chemical, biological, radiological or nuclear incidents before specialists arrive;

13. collaborate with allies and partners to tackle conflicts and build stability; share insights and expertise in counter-extremism, counter-radicalization and communications; exchange information and conduct joint operations to tackle specific threats; train law enforcement officers, prosecutors and judges; help other countries to develop effective protective security standards and enforce them; and share the latest techniques in responding effectively to attacks.

**5. Fill in the gaps with prepositions from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| by (2), into (1), through (1), of (9), in (5), on (3), to (2) |

The United Nations Office \_\_\_1\_\_\_ Counter-Terrorism was [established](https://www.un.org/sg/en/content/sg/statement/2017-06-15/statement-attributable-spokesman-secretary-general-united-nations) \_\_\_2\_\_\_ the adoption\_\_\_3\_\_\_ General Assembly resolution 71/291 \_\_\_4\_\_\_ 15 June 2017. Mr. Vladimir Ivanovich Voronkov was [appointed](https://www.un.org/sg/en/content/sg/personnel-appointments/2017-06-21/mr-vladimir-ivanovich-voronkov-russian-federation-under) as Under-Secretary-General \_\_\_5\_\_\_ the Office \_\_\_6\_\_\_ 21 June 2017.

As suggested \_\_\_7\_\_\_ Secretary-General Antonio Guterres \_\_\_8\_\_\_ hisreport ([A/71/858](http://www.un.org/en/ga/search/view_doc.asp?symbol=A/71/858)) \_\_\_9\_\_*\_* the Capability \_\_\_10\_\_\_ the United Nations \_\_\_ 11\_\_\_ assist Member States \_\_\_12\_\_\_ implementing the United Nations Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy*,* the [Counter-Terrorism Implementation Task Force](https://www.un.org/counterterrorism/ctitf/) and the [UN Counter-Terrorism Centre](https://www.un.org/counterterrorism/ctitf/en/uncct), initially established \_\_\_13\_\_\_ the Department \_\_\_14\_\_\_ Political Affairs were moved \_\_\_15\_\_\_ a new Office \_\_\_16\_\_\_ Counter-Terrorism headed \_\_\_\_17\_\_\_ an Under-Secretary–General.

The new Under-Secretary-General will provide strategic leadership \_\_\_18\_\_\_ United Nations counter-terrorism efforts, participate \_\_\_19\_\_\_ the decision-making process \_\_\_20\_\_\_ the United Nations and ensure that the cross-cutting origins and impact \_\_\_21\_\_\_ terrorism are reflected \_\_\_22\_\_\_ the work \_\_\_23\_\_\_ the United Nations.

**6. Translate the paragraph from English into Russian.**

The Office of Counter-Terrorism has five main functions:

- (a) provide leadership on the General Assembly counter-terrorism mandates entrusted to the Secretary-General from across the United Nations system;

- (b) enhance coordination and coherence across the 38 Counter-Terrorism Implementation Task Force entities to ensure the balanced implementation of the four pillars of the [UN Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy](https://www.un.org/counterterrorism/ctitf/un-global-counter-terrorism-strategy);

- (c) strengthen the delivery of United Nations counter-terrorism capacity-building assistance to Member States;

- (d) improve visibility, advocacy and resource mobilization for United Nations counter-terrorism efforts; and

- (e) ensure that due priority is given to counterterrorism across the United Nations system and that the important work on preventing violent extremism is firmly rooted in the Strategy.

The Office will aim to have a close relationship with Security Council bodies and Member States, strengthening existing and developing new partnerships through regular travel and attendance at counter-terrorism-related meetings.

The creation of the Office is the first major institutional reform undertaken by the Secretary-General.

**7. Render the paragraph into English using the tips in the brackets.**

Глобальная контртеррористическая стратегия Организации Объединенных Наций была принята (to adopt) государствами-членами 8 сентября 2006 года. Эта стратегия является уникальным глобальным документом, который укрепит (to enhance) национальные, региональные и международные усилия по борьбе с терроризмом (to counter).

Впервые все государства-члены согласились с общим стратегическим подходом к борьбе с терроризмом (to a common strategic and operational approach to fight terrorism), не только послав четкий сигнал (not only sending a clear message) о том, что терроризм неприемлем (unacceptable) во всех его формах и проявлениях (forms and manifestation), но и выразив решимость предпринять практические шаги (resolving to take practical steps), как в индивидуальном, так и в коллективном плане, по предотвращению терроризма и борьбы с ним (to prevent and combat it).

Эти практические шаги включают широкий круг мер (a wide array of measures), варьирующихся от укрепления государственного потенциала (ranging from strengthening state capacity) в деле борьбы с террористическими угрозами до лучшей координации контртеррористической деятельности системы Организации Объединенных Наций.

С принятием этой Стратегии было выполнено обязательство (fulfilled the commitment), принятое руководителями стран мира на Всемирном саммите в 2005 году (2005 World Summit). При этом Стратегия задействует многие элементы, предложенные [Генеральным секретарем](http://www.un.org/ru/counterterrorism/) (builds on many of the elements proposed by the Secretary-General), в его докладе от 2 мая 2006 года, озаглавленном (entitled) «[Единство в борьбе с терроризмом: рекомендации по глобальной контртеррористической стратегии](http://www.un.org/ru/documents/decl_conv/declarations/partnerships_strategy.shtml)».

**8. Using the Internet resources find the UN Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy and analyze it. Identify the main ideas of each pillar. Does the UN Strategy work in all countries? Report to the class.**

**9. Prepare short presentations on the topics.**

- The UN activity in countering terrorism.

- The role of the RF in combatting terrorism.

- The role and activity of Russian diplomats in counter-terrorism activity.

- What are the most effective measures in countering terrorism for the achieving global peace?

**Text 2**

**G20 Leaders Strengthen Their Efforts to Tackle Terrorist Financing Together**

**Vocabulary**

1. to increase transparency and beneficial ownership of legal persons and legal arrangements – повысить прозрачность бенефициарного права собственности в отношении юридических лиц в рамках действующего законодательства

2. to strengthen the FATF’s governance and institutional basis – укрепить организационные принципы и поднять уровень руководства FATF

3. to shut down all alternative sources of financing of terrorism – перекрыть все источники финансирования терроризма

4. to dismant the possible connections – разорвать возможные связи

5. to track terrorist financing – отслеживать каналы финансирования терроризма

6. ongoing research into the vulnerabilities linked to beneficial ownership – текущие исследования с целью установления (определения) уязвимости, связанной с бенефициарной собственностью

7. correspondent banking relationships– корреспондентские отношения (между банками)

8. money remittance providers – системы денежных переводов

**1. Read the text and focus on abbreviations of international organizations.**

Paris, 10 July 2017. G20 Leaders at the summit in Hamburg on 7-8 July, expressed their determination to fight terrorist financing. The FATF (Financial Action Task Force) reported to the G20 on its ongoing efforts in this area, including work to increase transparency and beneficial ownership of legal persons and legal arrangements, and to strengthen the FATF’s governance and institutional basis.

G20 leaders issued a detailed statement on Countering Terrorism. On fighting terrorist financing, the statement highlights a number of issues that the FATF is focusing on, and that are priorities for the Argentine Presidency of the FATF over the next year.

The G20 calls on all countries to shut down all alternative sources of financing of terrorism, including dismantling the possible connections between terrorism and organized crime, such as through human trafficking. In line with this and following the call by the United Nations in Security Council Resolution 2331, for the FATF and FATF-Style Regional Bodies to analyze the links between human trafficking and terrorist financing, the FATF will update and deepen its understanding of financial flows associated with human trafficking, including those that are ending up in the hands of terrorist organizations.

The G20 will focus on Fintech, Financial Intelligence Units and Banks in developing new tools and technologies to track terrorist financing. This echoes the efforts that FATF has undertaken over the last year, which resulted in the San Jose Principles, and which will remain an important issue during the Argentinean Presidency of the FATF.

The G20 recognizes that FATF has evolved since it was created as a temporary forum 27 years ago and it supports FATF’s focus on strengthening its institutional basis, especially by empowering the President’s role while interacting with member countries, other stakeholders and the general public. FATF will continue these discussions at its next Plenary.

The G20 Hamburg Action Plan highlights G20 support for FATF work on improving transparency and access to beneficial ownership through the effective implementation of the FATF Standard. This work includes:

* A recent report on inter-agency information sharing and guidance for private sector information sharing that is currently open to a public consultation.
* Ongoing research into the vulnerabilities linked to beneficial ownership, in collaboration with the Egmont Group of Financial Intelligence Units.
* A study on the effective enforcement and supervision of beneficial ownership obligations.

G20 Leaders called on FATF to provide a further progress report in early 2018.

The G20 welcomed FATF efforts to assess and address the decline in correspondent banking relationships, and financial access for money remittance providers, in collaboration with the FSB and Global Partnership for Financial Inclusion (GPFI).

Continued support by the G20 and its members, and their commitment to lead by example and ensure that they have fully and effectively implemented the FATF Standards will protect the integrity of the financial system and contribute to safety and security.

**2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. юридические лица

2. вносить вклад в обеспечение безопасности

3. Группа разработки финансовых мер борьбы с отмыванием денег и финансированием терроризма

4. надзор за выполнением обязательств

5. постоянные усилия

6. концентрироваться на вопросах

7. противодействие терроризму

8. разорвать возможные связи

9. разработка новых инструментов и технологий для отслеживания финансирования терроризма

10. акционеры

11. Глобальное партнерство для получения доступа к финансовым услугам

12. совместно, в сотрудничестве с

**3. Write down all possible collocations meaning “to fight terrorism”.**

**4. Answer the questions.**

1. What countries are the members of G20?

2. Do you think all countries will follow this detailed statement on countering terrorism?

3. Are there any other international organizations involved in countering terrorism?

**5. Make collocations with the words from the text and translate them from English into Russian. Use these word combinations in the sentences of your own.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. to strengthen | a. terrorist financing |
| 2. to highlight | b. a further progress report |
| 3. to provide | c. governance |
| 4. to express | d. a detailed statement |
| 5. to track | e. transparency |
| 6. to increase | f. determination |
| 7. to protect | g. a number of issues |
| 8. to issue | h. the integrity |

**6. Fill in the gaps with suitable Gerund forms from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| In developing new tools and technologies; the decline in correspondent banking relationship; work on improving transparency; sources of financing of terrorism; its understanding of financial flows; On fighting terrorist financing |

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the statement highlights a number of issues that the FATF is focusing on, and that are priorities for the Argentine Presidency of the FATF over the next year.

2. The G20 calls on all countries to shut down all alternative \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, including dismantling the possible connections between terrorism and organized crime.

3. The G20 Hamburg Action Plan highlights G20 support for FATF \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and access to beneficial ownership through the effective implementation of the FATF Standard.

4. The G20 welcomed FATF efforts to assess and address \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and financial access for money remittance providers, in collaboration with the FSB and Global Partnership for Financial Inclusion (GPFI).

5. … the FATF will update and deepen \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ associated with human trafficking, including those that are ending up in the hands of terrorist organisations.

6. The G20 will focus on Fintech, Financial Intelligence Units and Banks \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to track terrorist financing.

**7. Read, translate and analyze excerpts from the following legal instruments.**

**FEDERAL LAW NO 35-FZ OF 6 MARCH 2006 ON COUNTERACTION AGAINST TERRORISM “On Counteraction to Terrorism” adopted by the State Duma on February 26, 2006**

This Federal Law shall establish the fundamental principles of counteraction to terrorism, the legal and organizational basics of preventing terrorism and struggling against it, of reducing to a minimum and (or) liquidating the consequences of manifestations thereof, as well as the legal and organizational basics of using the Armed Forces of the Russian Federation in struggling against terrorism.

ARTICLE 1. LEGAL BASIS OF COUNTERACTION TO TERRORISM

The legal basis of counteraction to terrorism shall be the Constitution of the Russian Federation, generally recognized principles and rules of international law, international treaties made by the Russian Federation, this Federal Law and other federal laws, normative legal acts of the President of the Russian Federation, normative legal acts of the Government of the Russian Federation, as well as normative legal acts of other bodies of state power adopted in compliance with them.

ARTICLE 2. FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF COUNTERACTION TO TERRORISM

Counteraction to terrorism in the Russian Federation shall be based on the following fundamental principles: 1) ensuring and protecting fundamental civil and human rights and freedoms; 2) lawfulness; 3) prioritizing the protection of the rights and legitimate interests of persons at risk of being affected by terrorism; 4) inevitability of punishment for the exercise of terrorist activity; 5) systematic approach and complex use of political, informational-propagandistic, socioeconomic, legal, special and other measures of counteraction to terrorism; 6) cooperation of the State with public and religious associations, international and other organizations, as well as with citizens, in counteraction to terrorism; 7) priority of preventive measures against terrorism; 8) undivided authority in directing the personnel and materiel involved in conducting counterterrorism operations; 9) combination of public and private methods of counteraction to terrorism; 10) confidentiality of information concerning special means, techniques and tactics of taking measures against terrorism, as well as concerning the identity of those taking part in the said measures; 11) inadmissibility of political concessions to terrorists; 12) reduction to minimum and (or) liquidation of the consequences of terrorist manifestations; 13) adequacy of measures aimed at counteraction to terrorism to the degree of terrorist danger.

**DIRECTIVE (EU) 2017/541 OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL of 15 March 2017 on combating terrorism and replacing Council Framework Decision 2002/475/JHA and amending Council Decision 2005/671/JHA**

**TITLE I. SUBJECT MATTER AND DEFINITIONS**

ARTICLE 1. Subject matter

This Directive establishes minimum rules concerning the definition of criminal offences and sanctions in the area of terrorist offences, offences related to a terrorist group and offences related to terrorist activities, as well as measures of protection of, and support and assistance to, victims of terrorism.

ARTICLE 2. Definitions

For the purposes of this Directive, the following definitions apply:

(1) ‘funds’ means assets of every kind, whether tangible or intangible, movable or immovable, however acquired, and legal documents or instruments in any form, including electronic or digital, evidencing title to, or interest in, such assets, including, but not limited to, bank credits, travellers cheques, bank cheques, money orders, shares, securities, bonds, drafts, letters of credit,

(2) ‘legal person’ means any entity having legal personality under the applicable law, except for States or public bodies in the exercise of State authority and for public international organisations,

(3) ‘terrorist group’ means a structured group of more than two persons, established for a period of time and acting in concert to commit terrorist offences; ‘structured group’ means a group that is not randomly formed for the immediate commission of an offence and that does not need to have formally defined roles for its members, continuity of its membership or a developed structure.

**8**. **What other international and national legal instruments deal with terrorism related issues? Using the Internet resources identify the main tasks and purposes of each document.**

**Role Play**

Act out round table talks “The problem of terrorism in Europe”.

The participants of the round-table are: representatives of the EU member-states, journalists.

Choose a chairperson to conduct the meeting. He lays down the agenda, prepared previously. The roles are distributed and prepared beforehand. Make use of different information resources.

|  |
| --- |
| **Grammar Revision** |

**Prepositional phrases**

Prepositions are often used in common phrases where little variation is possible. Some prepositions go with groups of similar words:

at - at breakfast, at lunch, at dinner, at supper

for - for example, for instance

in - in a dress, in a pair of jeans, in a skirt, in uniform

on - on e-mail, on the phone

Prepositions can combine to make compound phrases:

out of date, out of fashion

Words with related meanings often go with different prepositions:

in cash / dollars - by credit card

on earth - in the world

by accident - on purpose

at the bottom - in the bottom left-hand corner

at the door - on the phone

by car - on foot

on holiday - at work

in a loud voice - at the top of his voice

Here are more common phrases with prepositions:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***at*** | by | for | in | on | out |
| at all times | by accent | for a change | in conclusion | on behalf of | out of order |
| at first sight | by heart | for ages | in the west | on condition that | out of practice |
| at the moment | by chance | for breakfast | in control | on no account | out of favor |
| at the age of | by mistake | for fear of | in danger | on my own | out of the wood |
| at the beginning | by the way | for fun/pleasure | in favor of | on purpose | out of the way |
| at breakfast | by bus / train | for good | in general | on second thoughts | out of touch |
| at the bottom of | by sea / land / air | for granted | in other words | on the whole | out of work |
| at the bus stop | by example | for ever | in time | on business | out of breath |
| at sea | by sight | for luck | in cash | on a diet | out of control |
| at the corner | by means of | for life | in a uniform | on arrival | out of danger |
| at dawn | by no means | for nothing | in a dress | on average | out of date |
| at last | by cheque | for ever | in haste | on foot | out of doors |
| at the door | day by day | for sale | in German | on the other hand | out of fashion |
| at the end | by Beethoven | for short | in pencil | on line | out of luck |
| at first | by air mail | for a visit | in a group | on duty | out of print |
| at once | by e-mail | for a walk | in addition (to) | on fire | out of sight |
| at home | by fax/phone | for a while | in answer (to) | on horseback | out of tune |
| at arm's length | by far | for now | in future | on the left/right | out of reach |
| at least | by the rules | for your birthday | in general | on the floor | out of earshot |
| at the same time | by the arm | for better or worse | in the news | on the phone | out of money |
| at daybreak | by telepathy | for my sake | in pairs | on the screen | out of time |
| at work | by hand | for the moment | in a loud voice | on holiday | out of pocket |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| ***to*** | **up** | **from** |
| to some extent | up to date | from A to В |
| to the point | up to you | from bad to worse |
| to my surprise | up and down | from place to place |
| to your advantage | up till/until | from time to time |
| to our amazement | up the hill | from morning to night |
| to your health | up the spout | from now on |
| to some degree | up to no good | from my point of view |
| to you | up as far as | from flour / wood/plastic |

in the beginning or at the beginning?

* In the beginning (not usually with of) means ‘near the start of an event’:

In the beginning, the South had some success.

* At the beginning of means ‘at the very start of an event’:

At the beginning of the Civil War, the fort was attacked.

at the end or in the end?

* At the end (of) refers to the final part (of a period of time, a road, a book, a film, etc.):

He’s leaving at the end of October.

Their house is at the end of the road.

* In the end means ‘finally’:

We waited and waited in the end, we decided to go back home.

by bus or on the bus?

* By bus refers to using buses as a means of transport:

I usually go to work by bus.

* We can use on the bus for specific journeys to particular destinations:

I came home ***on the bus.***

If we go there on the bus, we’ll have more time to chat.

made of, made out of or made from?

* We use made of when it is obvious what substance has been used to make something: A little doll made of wood.
* We use made out of when we emphasize the substance from which something is made: It’s made out of woody not plastic.
* We use made from to say what ingredients have been used:

Bread is made from flour, water and yeast.

**1. Fill in each space with an appropriate preposition.**

1. The report, which will be ready ….. the beginning of next week, will be sent to you ….. e-mail.

2. I agree with you …..some extent but ….. general I would have put things differently.

3. ….. the beginning, I thought the book was interesting but ….. the end of the book the hero gets killed.

4. He’s been ….. of work for over six months and can’t afford to go ….. holiday.

5. He thought the chair was made ….. of wood but ….. his surprise it was all plastic.

6. ….. the top left corner of the picture I can see a hill; ….. the bottom of the hill there is a bicycle.

7. He was driving ….. the middle of the road and seemed to be completely ….. of control.

8. ….. my opinion, you can’t go to the party …… a dress like that.

9. ….. dessert, we had a lovely cake made ….. chocolate and almonds.

10. There’s a shop ….. the corner of the street that sells vegetables ….. morning till night.

**2. Choose the correct word in each of the following sentences.**

1. From my point of opinion/*view*, there’s little advantage in buying shares now.

2. His health is going from bad to worse/ill.

3. The kids were really in a silly mood/behavior after the party.

4. I don’t know whether it’s true but that’s what it said on the radio/newspaper.

5. I can get the information to you more quickly if you’re on phone/e-mail.

6. You don’t think he would have broken the window on accident/purpose, do you?

7. He is the officer in charge/power of the investigation.

8. When Romeo met Juliet, it was love at first sight/look.

9. Why don’t you send the message by e-mail/phone?

10. After the accident, she was rushed to hospital and is now out of *danger/risk*.

**3. Read the text below and add the word which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.**

**Living a long time**

It is often said that Japanese people, on ... (0) average, live much longer than Europeans. ….. (1) a large extent this must be due to the food most Japanese people eat since ….. (2) the point of view of lifestyle, life ….. (3) modern Japan is no less stressful than ours ….. (4) the West. The Japanese live ….. (5) a diet largely made up ….. (6) fish and rice ….. (7) lunch time a typical Japanese family will consume ….. (8) least twice as many vegetables as we do in Europe. ….. (9) comparison with Europeans, the Japanese eat far less meat and fewer potatoes; ….. (10) the same time, they eat seven times more fresh fish than we do which makes their diet much healthier ….. far (11). It would be fair to say that, ….. (12) general, the Japanese consume far less sugar than Europeans, though the modern Japanese - frequent visitors ….. (13) Europe ….. (14) business or ….. (15) pleasure – are discovering the pleasures and dangers of western-style eating habits.

**Test yourself**

**Test 6**

**“International crimes. Terrorism”**

**Task I. Skim three parts of the text and title them.**

1. Human trafficking is a process of people being recruited in their community and country of origin and transported to the destination where they are being exploited for purposes of forced labor, prostitution, domestic servitude, and other forms of exploitation. According to the conclusion of the UN Committee ‘trafficking of persons’ is the recruitment, transportation, transfer, harboring or receipt of persons. It is provided by means of the threat or use of force or other forms of coercion, of abduction, of fraud, of deception, of the abuse of power or of a position of vulnerability or of the giving or receiving of payments or benefits to achieve the consent of a person. Exploitation shall include, at a minimum, the exploitation of the prostitution of others or other forms of sexual exploitation, forced labor or services, slavery or practices similar to slavery, servitude or the removal of organs.
2. Traffickers use a variety of methods to create a vulnerable condition for the victims so that the victims do not have any other choice but obey the traffickers. One of the common methods used by traffickers is debt-bondage in which the traffickers tell their victims that they owe money relating to

their travel and living expenses and that they will not be released until the debt has been repaid. Traffickers also use other methods including starvation, imprisonment, physical abuse (beatings and rape), verbal abuse, removal of victims. Especially in the case of cross-border trafficking, victims often do not speak the local language or do not have any social network to assist them so that they are depending on members of their own ethnic group receiving them in the destination country. Furthermore, victims’ illegal status makes it difficult for them to seek help from law enforcement, the healthcare system and/or other public services.

1. It is impossible to calculate the actual number of trafficking victims. Differences in definition and methodology, together with a general lack of reliable data, result in an immense variation in global estimates of the number of trafficked victims. Even though the estimates vary widely, some common traits have emerged from these databases. The largest percentage of estimated victims is trafficked for sexual exploitation, thus women constitute the majority of estimated victims. Because some countries only have legislation criminalizing trafficking for sexual exploitation or trafficking in women, trafficking in men and boys might have been largely under-reported because it is not properly recorded.

**Task II. Read the text. Which part of the text contains information**

1. about different approaches in calculation of victims;
2. that the majority of victims are women;
3. that traffickers deceive the victims;
4. that victims don’t understand the language of the country where they live;
5. about the United Nations Organization;
6. that the victims owe money to the traffickers;
7. that many countries don’t have special laws about human trafficking.

**Task III. Add these sentences to the appropriate part of the text.**

1. They can assure their parents into leaving home with the promise of a better life. In some occasions desperate parents will sell their children to a trafficker so that they have fewer mouths to feed.
2. It was reported in the case of labor trafficking of men in Belarus and Ukraine the recruitment generally mimicked legal migration. Male victims often thought that they had legally binding agreements with reliable companies, employment agencies and recruiters.
3. The problem of trafficking arises from a range of development issues, from terrible poverty, imperfect justice and rules of law, unemployment, ignorance and indifference of people.
4. Once human trafficking victims are rescued from traffickers, victims need access to basic services, such as shelter, legal assistance, transportation, medical exams, and psychological counseling.

**Task IV. There are 5 reasons why human trafficking is not so widely spread in our country as in Africa and Asia. Write them down.**

**Task V. Give Russian equivalents to the following English words and word combinations.**

1. Act of violence

2. To create fear (terror)

3. Criminal activity

4. Legitimate combatants

5. General public`s point of view

6. The flow of money

7. Suspicious money

8. A matter of serious concern

9. Abundant resources

10. Criminal endeavor

**Task. VI. Match the words with their definitions:**

1. Oppression
2. Conflict

3. Opponent

4. Threat

5. Evil

1. Victim
2. Target
3. A state of disagreement or argument between people, groups, countries.
4. A result which you aim to achieve.
5. Someone who disagrees with a plan, idea and wants to try and stop.
6. Someone who has been attacked, robbed, or murdered, someone who suffers.
7. Someone very harmful or unpleasant.
8. Strong disagreement with, or protest against, something such as a plan, law or system.
9. A state that you will cause someone pain, unhappiness, or trouble.

**Task VII. Complete the text using the words/phrases from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| a) Attacks, b) hate, c) murder, d) bombings, e) all over the world, f) cruel, g) blew up, h) religion, i) types, j) to force, k) political |

Terrorism in the World

Terrorism, which has been around for as long as people can remember, has been on the rise for the past ten years. Terrorists use 1 \_\_\_\_\_\_ , kidnapping, hijacking, and 2 \_\_\_\_\_\_ to almost always achieve a political purpose. These radicals are not just subject to the United States, terrorism is 3 \_\_\_\_\_\_ , in every way, shape and form.

There are many different 4\_\_\_\_\_\_ of terrorism, for many different purposes. The primary reason for terrorist acts is 5 \_\_\_\_\_\_ a change in their nation's government. If terrorists are not satisfied with these government's 6\_\_\_\_\_ positions, they may end up taking the matters into their own hands. Another reason for terrorist acts is because of 7 \_\_\_\_\_\_ towards a race, nationality, or 8\_\_\_\_\_\_. For example, in 1972 the Palestine Liberation Organization invaded Israeli dorms in the Munich Olympics and held the Israeli athletes hostage until Israel would agree to release Palestinian terrorists that were captured in Israel. When Israel refused to comply with the terrorists demands, they 9 \_\_\_\_\_ two helicopters which held the Israeli athletes, killing the whole team. This was one of the many 10 \_\_\_\_\_\_ types of terrorism. In recent years, terrorism seems to be at a new high and 11 \_\_\_\_\_ are more violent than in the past.

With terrorism being so secretive and having no forewarning, it has been a real problem to deal with. The governments of many countries have tried to stop these cowardly acts, but they just seem to be on the rise.

**Be ready to answer these questions**

1. What does international criminal law deal with?

2. What is the jurisdiction of the International Criminal Court?

3. How is it possible to define “racism”? What form of racism has existed for a long time?

4. What form of racism is represented by apartheid? What is the essence of apartheid?

5. How is genocide defined by international law?

6. What acts comprise the crime of genocide?

7. What is the difference between ethnic cleansing and genocide?

8. What acts typically accompany ethnic cleansing?

9. What is piracy? Identify three types of piracy.

10. What crimes can be referred to as war crimes?

11. What is corruption?

12. What criminal offences does corruption include in terms of international law?

13. What criminal enterprises can be facilitated by corruption?

14. What is money laundering?

15. What are the three steps involved in the process of money laundering? Describe them.

16. What is political corruption?

17. What is kleptocracy?

18. What does this system typically involve?

19. What are kleptocracies typically associated with?

20. What are the effects of kleptocratic regimes?

21. What are antitrust laws and what illegal practices are they directed against?

22. What does the UN do to combat corruption?

23. What is human trafficking? Identify its forms.

24. Who becomes victims of different forms of human trafficking and why?

25. What is the modern description of terrorism?

26. What are well-known sources of financing terrorism?

27. What are the reasons for the state to support terrorism?

28. What types of terrorism are identified?

29. What is the role of G20 in combatting terrorism?

30. What international legal instruments deal with terrorism related issues?

**GLOSSARY**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| oppression | угнетение, гнет, тирания |
| abomination | отвращение, омерзение |
| to confer coercive power | утверждать власть силами принуждения |
| preemption | уничтожение упреждающим ударом |
| to pursue extreme goal | преследовать крайние цели |
| nebulous | смутный, неясный |
| to oppose | сопротивляться, быть против |
| perspective | взгляд, точка зрения |
| combatant | участник сражения |
| psychological warfare | психологическая война |
| to counter vigorously | решительно противостоять |
| to elicit response | получить отклик |
| to cause an effect | оказать воздействие |
| truism | прописная истина |
| political contest | политическая борьба |
| violence and destruction | насилие и разрушения |
| casualty | жертва происшествия |
| massacre | бойня, резня |
| hostage taking operation | операция по захвату заложников |
| to free hostages | освобождать заложников |
| bargaining chips | козырь в запасе (на переговорах) |
| to maim | нанести увечье, причинить тяжкое телесное повреждение |
| a means of coercion | средство принуждения |
| to perpetrate | совершить преступление |
| to further an objective | способствовать достижению цели |
| a felon | преступник, совершивший тяжкое преступление |
| masterminds, ringleaders, instigators | заказчики, зачинщики |
| henchmen, accomplices | пособники, приспешники |
| a strong and merciless enemy | сильный и беспощадный враг |
| to eliminate, destroy, wipe out, end | полностью искоренить, ликвидировать |
| to keep abreast of | идти в ногу со временем |
| the financing of terrorism | финансирование терроризма |
| hawala system | неформальная система денежных переводов, ассоциирующаяся в последнее время с отмыванием денег и финансированием терроризма |
| suspicious money transfer operation | операции по переводу сомнительных денежных средств |
| subterfuge | уловка, безнаказанность, махинация |
| criminal endeavors | покушение на преступление |
| to shut the flow of money | перекрыть поток денежных средств |
| to intercept | перехватывать информацию |
| The International Convention for the Suppression of the Financing of Terrorism | Международная конвенция по борьбе с финансированием терроризма |
| weaponry | вооружение, боевая техника |
| to disguise | изменять внешний вид |
| to curb the financing of terrorism | пресечь финансирование терроризма |
| terrorist front organizations | подставная организация, действующая в интересах террористов |
| a preventive measure | предупредительная мера |
| compliance with | соблюдение (положений договора, конвенций, протоколов) |
| informal arrangement | неформальное соглашение |
| legal arrangements | организации, обладающие правами юридических лиц |
| to counter terrorism | бороться с терроризмом |
| counter-terror measure | контртеррористическое мероприятие |
| Counter-Terrorism Committee | Антитеррористический комитет |
| to tackle terrorist financing | вести борьбу с финансированием терроризма |

**MODULE VII**

**Chapter 13**

**COMBATING DRUG ABUSE**

**UNIT 1**

Lead-in

**1. Look at the definition of the word “drug” and translate it into Russian.**

The word “drug” means:

1. Natural or synthetic substance which affects functioning or structure of a human body, and is used in the diagnosis, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of a disease or relief of discomfort. It is also called “a legal drug” or “medicine”. A legal or medical drug (such as amphetamines), however, can be harmful and addictive if misused.

2. Habit forming stimulant or narcotic substance (such as alcohol, cannabis, nicotine, or a derivative of cocoa or poppy) which produces a state of arousal, contentment, or euphoria. Continued or excessive use (called drug abuse or substance abuse) of such substances causes addiction or dependence.

**Text 1**

**Drugs: the Overwhelming Concern**

**Vocabulary**

1.a medicine taken by sick people for treatment – лекарство, принимаемое больными людьми для лечения

1. substance – вещество
2. relax or euphoria – расслабление или эйфория
3. to try an illegal drug - пробовать наркотики
4. innocent bystanders - невинный свидетель
5. to increase the damage of intoxication – повысить опасность injection drug use – инъекция наркотика
6. to be behind bars for dealing – привлекаться к суду за распространение наркотиков
7. enormous amount of crimes – огромное количество преступлений
8. to refine products from plant – получать продукты из растений

**2. Before reading the text check your skills in reading of the most difficult terminology in this unit.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1 | psychoactive substance [saɪkəʊˈæktɪv] | психоактивное вещество |
| 2 | immunodeficiency [ɪmjuːnəʊdɪˈfɪʃnsɪ] | иммунодефицит |
| 3 | virus [ˈvaɪərəs] | вирус |
| 4 | hepatitis [hepəˈtaɪtɪs] | гепатит |
| 5 | organic chemistry [ɔːˈgænɪk ˈkemɪstrɪ] | органическая химия |
| 6 | morphin [ˈmɔːfiːn] | морфин |
| 7 | cocain [kəˈkeɪn] | кокаин |
| 8 | amphetamin [æmˈfetəmiːn] | амфитамин |
| 9 | heroin [ˈherəʊɪn] | героин |
| 10 | hypodermicsyringe [haɪpəʊˈdɜːmɪkˈsɪrɪnʤ] | шприц для подкожной  инъекции |

**3. Read the text and match the titles with the passages.**

a) State control

b) Not only illegal drugs are fatal

c) World disaster

d) Used for ages

e) Producing drugs from plants

f) Modern abilities

g) Historical aspect

1) For many years the word “drug” meant a medicine, which was taken by sick people for treatment. But from the beginning of the twentieth century this word has obtained the new meaning. Now it names the substance which is taken by people who want to get some relax or euphoria in spite fatal consequences. This effect has become so widely spread that it has turned into a great trouble. But by all means, while walking along streets in English speaking countries, you may see many shops which are called “Drug store”, where you can buy some medicine but not drugs.

2) The devastation caused by drugs and drug dealing is familiar to us from mass media and our life experience. A quarter of 14-15 year old teenagers in many countries have already tried an illegal drug. What is more, injection drug use fuels epidemics of HIV and hepatitis. Half a million people are behind bars for dealing. Moreover, dependent users commit enormous amount of crimes under drug influence or in order to finance drug purchases, while dealers’ violence effects more and more innocent bystanders. It is not a secret that international drug trafficking supports corruption, insurgency and terrorism.

3) However, the problem is not in illegal drugs only. Half of all criminal violence and automobile fatalities are caused by drunkenness. One of twelve adults suffers from a substance abuse disorder or that 8 million children are living with addicted parents. It is important to remember that alcohol abuse and cigarette smoking kill more people than all the illegal drugs combined.

4) The problem is not new. People have used chemicals to alter their state of mind since before there were written records. Wherever there is fruit or grain, there is the possibility of fermentation. By some accounts, beer is older than bread, and other psychoactive substances, such as opium, are comparably ancient. Mind affecting molecules have been, and are still, used for relaxation, for recreation, for healing and easing pain, for making and enjoying music and art, for seduction, for work, for battle, and for worship.

5) Moreover, urbanization and industrialization have increased the damage of intoxication. Technology has created new and more potent psychoactives, and trade has spread them over great territories. A resident of any city today has access to dozens, if not hundreds of psychoactive substances. The availability of multiple drugs raises the possibility of drug combinations, which can be more deadly than any drug alone. Most contemporary societies also offer their citizens more wealth and more leisure than any of the ancients knew and this prosperity makes drugs more available and can also foster drug abuse.

6) The nineteenth century gave us both organic chemistry, the possibility to produce refined products from plant materials (including morphine and cocaine) and potent synthetic or semisynthetic molecules (such as the amphetamines and heroin), and the hypodermic syringe as an especially efficient means of getting them to brain.

7) The strong desire for drugs and the risk of drug-related damage are realities that cannot be merely wished away. Custom, religion, and law have always created some constraints on drug use and nowadays countries have stated the drug-abuse control as a field of public policy, embodied in domestic statutes and international treaties.

**4. Work in pairs. Look through the text again and match English phrases with the Russian equivalents.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. overwhelming concern | 1. оплачивать покупку наркотиков |
| 2. devastation caused by | 2. способность брожения |
| 3. to fuel epidemics | 3. для устранения и облегчения боли |
| 4. HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) | 4. способствовать распространению эпидемии |
| 5. to be behind the bar | 5. расстройства, связанные со злоупотреблением психоактивных веществ |
| 6. to finance drug purchases | 6. всеобщее беспокойство |
| 7. a substance abuse disorder | 7. шприц для одноразового использования |
| 8. possibility of fermentation | 8. ВИЧ (вирус иммунодефицита человека) |
| 9. for healing and easing pain | 9. разрушительные последствия, вызванные чем-то |
| 10. to foster drug abuse | 10. нельзя просто отмахнуться |
| 11. hypodermic syringe | 11. способствовать наркомании |
| 12. cannot be merely wished away | 12. находиться в тюрьме |

**5. Reconstruct the text using the key words given in the boxes and reproduce it to your partner.**

**Text 2**

**Drugs and Crime**

**1. Guess the meaning and match English phrases 1-10 to their Russian equivalents a-i.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. drug-related crime | 1. быть направленным на |
| 1. to be decent | 1. торговля наркотиками |
| 1. young offender institutions | 1. иметь криминальное прошлое |
| 1. careful assessment | 1. учреждения для малолетних преступников |
| 1. to have a criminal record | 1. преступления, связанные с наркотиками |
| 1. to reduce consumption of drugs | 1. быть порядочным, благопристойным |
| 1. drug trafficking | 1. тщательная оценка |
| 1. well-intended citizens | 1. уменьшить потребление наркотиков |
| 1. to be targeted at | 1. благонамеренные граждане |

**2. Work with your partner and answer the questions.**

1. How may the crime be connected with drugs?
2. If a person committed a crime being affected by drugs, should the punishment be mitigated or hardened?

**Vocabulary**

1. to be addicted to drugs – быть зависимым от наркотиков
2. burglary and robbery – кража со взломом и грабеж
3. murder or manslaughter – убийство и непредумышленное убийство
4. to force to commit a crime – заставить совершить преступление
5. to mitigate the sentence – смягчить приговор
6. exaggerating factor – усугубляющий фактор
7. to serve sentences – отбывать заключение по приговору суда
8. to be aware of the appalling effects – знать об ужасающий последствиях
9. to have a long-life criminal record – иметь печать уголовного прошлого на всю жизнь

**3. Read and translate the text into Russian.**

Many people, in particular teenagers and those in twenties, who become addicted to drugs, turn to life of crime. It happens in order to pay the large sums of money needed to buy their drugs. Usually it is burglary and robbery, and sometimes murder or manslaughter. That is why there is a term “drug related crime”.

Drugs are connected with crime in multiple ways. Most directly, it is a crime to use, to possess, to manufacture, or distribute drugs classified as having a potential for abuse (such as cocaine, heroin, marijuana, and amphetamines). Drugs are also related to crime through the effects they have on the user’s behavior and by generating violence and other illegal activity in connection with drug trafficking.

Many people who are decent and well-intentioned citizens find themselves forced to commit a crime in order to pay for drugs. But in case of robbery, theft and burglary drug taking is not the reason for mitigating the sentence, but become the exaggerating factor. Offenders will have to serve sentences in young offender institutions or prisons as a result. Any judge, dealing with drug cases, is aware of the appalling effects of drug taking upon the lives of the old and young drug takers. Usually their mental and physical health is broken by taking dangerous drugs.

In the UK there is a state project – the Special Drug Treatment and Testing Orders – which require close supervision of the offender by the court. It can be applied to the offenders aged 6 and over for the period of from six months to three years. This project is targeted at serious drug misusers to reduce the amount of crime they commit. A person is included into the project after careful assessment. Besides he should have real motivation to be treated and give his consent. The progress provides three main elements: treatment, regular drug testing and regular reviews by the court of the offender’s progress.

Another serious legal consequence of drug offence is that anyone once convicted will have a long-life criminal record. It means a conviction can spoil the ability to get a good work or a high social position. The information about taking drugs should be revealed in the employment form or individual CV. Drug addiction will also create problems for these who wish to travel, as some countries have very strict rules prohibiting entry for foreigners who have even minor convictions for drug offences.

Different countries have laws against the unlawful use, manufacture, and distribution of drugs. The purpose of these laws is to reduce the unlawful consumption of drugs, reduce drug-related crime and severely punish major drug dealers and those who repeat crimes connected with drugs. The most serious drug crimes are: producing illegal drugs, possession of drugs with the intent to distribute them, selling drugs.

**4. Match English phrases 1-10 to their Russian equivalents a-i.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. drug-related crime | a. быть направленным на |
| 2. to be decent | b. торговля наркотиками |
| 3. young offender institutions | c. иметь криминальное прошлое |
| 4. careful assessment | d. учреждения для малолетних преступников |
| 5. to have a criminal record | e. преступления, связанные с наркотиками |
| 6. to reduce consumption of drugs | f. быть порядочным, благопристойным |
| 7. drug trafficking | g. тщательная оценка |
| 8. well-intended citizens | h. уменьшить потребление наркотиков |
| 9. to be targeted at | i. благонамеренные граждане |

**5. Find synonyms to the following words in the text.**

1. To have drugs
2. To spread drugs
3. To make drugs
4. To give drugs to smb and take money for it
5. Crime made because of drugs
6. To be sentenced for drugs
7. People who use drugs
8. The process of curing people taking drugs
9. Examination of drug takers
10. Illegal action connected with drugs

**6. Answer the following questions**.

1. What is the age when people usually start to use drugs?
2. What is the most frequent reason to commit a drug related crime?
3. What activities connected with drugs are legally punishable?
4. Does drug addiction mitigate punishment for crime?
5. What harmful effect does the drug addiction usually have?
6. What are the necessary conditions for taking part in the UK Special project?
7. Why does a criminal record influence life of a former convicted person?

8. Make the abstract of the text according to the plan and present it to your partner.

1. Introductive part
2. The main part (enumerate all ideas)
3. The conclusion (your own)

**Unit 2**

**Lead-in**

1. What do you know about the history of drugs?

2. Do you think that taking drugs may be useful?

3. Have you ever met a person addicted to drugs? How did he look like?

4. Have you ever tried to help a person addicted to drugs?

**Vocabulary**

1. human mental functions – функции человеческого мозга

2. abusable drugs – психоактивные наркотики, вызывающие хронические прогрессирующие, очень опасные заболевания

3. non-abusable drugs – медицинские наркологические вещества (анальгетики)

4. to be taken under a doctor’s orders – принимать по предписанию врача

5. in sufficient quantity – в достаточном количестве

6. tiny amount – очень маленькое, крошечное количество

7. death from overdose **–** смерть от передозировки

8. all-too-familiar example – всем известный пример

9. destruction of the user’s body – разрушение организма

**1. Check your skills in reading the most difficult terms in the next text.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. | Biological | [baɪəʊˈlɔʤɪkəl] | биологический |
| 2. | Benign | [bɪˈnaɪn] | доброкачественный |
| 3. | Penicillin | [penɪˈsɪlɪn] | пенициллин |
| 4. | Caffeine | [ˈkæfiːn] | кофеин |
| 5. | Nicotine | [ˈnɪkətiːn] | никотин |
| 6. | physiological | [fɪzɪəˈlɔʤɪkəl] | физиологический |
| 7. | toxicity | [tɒkˈsɪsɪtɪ] | токсичность |

**Text 1**

**What is a drug?**

**2. Six phrases were taken out of the text (a-f). Read the text and fill in the gaps, putting the phrases (a-f) in the right places (1-6).**

1. if continued over months or years
2. First the man takes a drink
3. and inflict on others
4. but also from a person to a person and from occasion to occasion.
5. and no one wants to take more than the prescribed amount.
6. the body or the mind.

Drug is a chemical that influences biological function of human body. Some drugs come from plants, some from laboratories. Some are traditional and familiar, others are novel. A drug's effect can be benign or harmful, or both, often depending on the dose.

We can define psychoactive drugs, which influence human mental functions. They can be abusable and non-abusable. So penicillin is a drug, but not abusable, it can be taken under a doctor’s orders **1\_\_\_\_\_.** Nevertheless, caffeine, nicotine, alcohol, cocaine, heroin, morphine and many others, which are used not for treatment, but for so called “pleasure”, are abusable psychoactive drugs.

Abusable drugs can cause three distinct types of problems: physiological toxicity, behavioral toxicity and addiction.

Almost any chemical will damage **2\_\_\_\_\_** if taken in sufficient quantity and the maxim is “The dose makes the poison”. The tiny amount of botulism toxin (Botox) is a beauty aid, but a little larger amount is a deadly weapon. The most dramatic toxic risk is a sudden death from overdose. The probability of a fatal dose varies with the quantity consumed **3\_\_\_\_\_\_.** Mixing drugs tends to increase the risk, taking two drugs together, each at a dosage safe if taken alone, can be fatal.

Overdose is not the only form of toxicity. Even a dose that causes no damage when taken once or a few times can still create harm **4\_\_\_\_\_.** A drug with no overdose risk – tobacco in the form of cigarettes, for example – can be profoundly toxic in chronic use.

Intoxication is always risky, especially for someone not used to is or in unfamiliar circumstances. A fight, a crash, a prank, or a sexual encounter resulting from occasional intoxication can have lifelong consequences. One peculiar form of behavioral toxicity is loss of self-control due to over dosage, as in the all-too-familiar example of binge drinking. As the saying goes “**5\_\_\_\_\_,** then the drink takes a drink, then the drink takes the man”.

Drug taking can develop into a bad habit – that is a pattern, which is difficult to break even once the person understands that his behavior is a problem. This is addiction. Sometimes it can be harmless habits such as chocolate addiction. However, drug addiction is an unwanted and hard-to-break habit that leads to taking a drug more often or in greater amounts and that will bring to destruction of the user’s body. Addicts suffer **6\_\_\_\_\_\_\_** and this is an enormous amount of damage.

**3. Match the words and phrases 1-13 with their synonyms a-m.**

1. Plant, 2. novel, 3. benign, 4. abusable, 5. non-abusable,

6. treatment, 7. addiction, 8. tiny, 9. deadly weapon,

10. quantity, 11. lifelong consequences, 12. peculiar, 13. all-too-familiar.

a. very small, b. outcome which will last always, c. allowed,

d. new, e. special, f. well known to everybody, g. herb,

h. not harmful, i. curing, j. lethal means of destruction,

k. amount, l. illegal, m. bad habit.

**4. Work in pairs and answer the questions.**

1. What is the influence of drugs on the body?
2. In what categories psychoactive drugs can be divided?
3. What is the role of the dose in drug addiction?
4. What are the consequences of occasional drug intoxication?
5. What are the results of permanent drug misuse?

**4. Work in small groups or pairs. Fill in the cluster with information from the text and describe every position to your partner.**

**Drugs can be**

1.

2.

**Text 2**

**Death Dangerous Drugs**

**1. Check your skills in reading the most difficult terms of the next text.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1 | marijuana | [mærɪˈhwɑːnə] | марихуана |
| 2 | euphoria | [juːˈfɔːrɪə] | эйфория |
| 3 | hallucination | [həluːsɪˈneɪʃn] | галлюцинация |
| 4 | hallucinogen | [həluːsɪnəˈʤen] | галлюциноген |
| 5 | hydrochloride | [haɪdrəˈklɔːraɪd] | гидрохлорид |
| 6 | excitability | [ɪksaɪtəˈbɪlɪtɪ] | возбудимость |
| 7 | opiates | [ˈəʊpɪɪt] | опиаты |

**2. Work in pairs and play out the dialogue** between Mr.Sergei Losev, narcologist in the Clinic of Psychiatry, and Ms. Elena Krasina, correspondent of the youth radio program. They are talking about death dangerous drugs. Put down the correspondent’s questions (not less than 12) and give the doctor’s answers. Use the data from the table below or add it from the Internet.

You may use the following patterns of questions given in Russian. Translate them into English if you need them and revise your grammar in putting questions:

1. Каковы наиболее распространенные виды … ?
2. Каковы формы … ?
3. Каковы последствия приема … ?
4. К чему приводит … ?
5. Как выглядит … ?
6. Что происходит с … ?
7. Возможен ли летальный исход … ?
8. Каковы симптомы … ?
9. Каковы внешние признаки … ?
10. Как … производится … ?

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Drug name** | **Effects** | **Dangers** | **Addiction** |
| **Marijuana**  Other forms – **hashish, hashish oil.** Prepared marijuana is dried. Usually smoked in hand-rolled cigarettes, or pipes. | Euphoric feeling,  Lack of motivation, talkativeness.  Impaired coordination, concentration, and memory. Increased heat rate. | “Burn out”, muddled thinking, acute frustration, and isolation. Dangers for lungs and sexual system, impossibility of reproduction.  Hallucinations and paranoia. | Psychological dependence, become chronic users, or become abusers of «harder» drugs such as cocaine, LSD, and other hallucinogens. |
| **Cocaine hydrochloride,** white crystalline powder, which is sometimes “cut” or diluted with other substances such as sugar Other forms – **crack (rock) or freebase.** | Feeling of euphoria stimulates the central nervous system.  Increases pulse, blood pressure, body temperature, and respiratory rate. Dilates the pupils of eyes. Causes extreme excitability and anxiety. | Nasal bleeding. Paranoid psychosis, hallucinations, and other mental abnormalities.  Impaired driving ability. Death caused by heart or respiratory failure. | Intense craving for the drug once use is discontinued. If the craving is not satisfied, the individual may experience irritability, depression, and loss of energy. |
| **Heroin and other Opiates**  **Heroin** is white to dark brown powder. Can be injected, snorted, or smoked **Morphine, Codeine** are usually injected or taken orally. | Short-lived state of euphoria, followed by drowsiness.  Slowed heart rate, breathing, brain activity.  Depressed appetite, thirst, reflexes.  Increased tolerance for pain. | AIDS, blood poisoning, and hepatitis.  Death resulting from an unexpectedly purity of the drug.  Convulsions, coma, or death from overdose. | Malnutrition, infection, and unattended injuries and diseases, physical and psychological consequences. Quickly developing addiction. |
| **Amphetamines**- chemically manufactured drugs come in the form of capsules, pills, or tablets. Enters the brain much more quickly. Highly addictive. | Increases heat rate and blood pressure.  Dilates the pupils of the eyes. Produces feelings of alertness and euphoria.  Causes distorted thinking and sleeplessness. | Convulsions and physical collapse.  blood pressure  Hallucinations, paranoia, physical collapse, and brain deteriorations. Overdose is be fatal. | Highly addictive physically and psychologically. Experience a “crash” which is difficult to break |
| **Inhalants.** Common **inhalants** include cement fingernail, polish remover, lighter fluid, nitrous oxide, ether, hair spray, insecticides, and cleaning fluid  Produce psychoactive effect. | Short-term dizziness and light-headedness. Can cause, nose bleeds, nausea, abnormal heart rhythm, and chest pains. Long term – liver, nerve, and brain damage, heart failure, respiratory arrest, suffocation, coma, and death. | Death results when high concentration of the inhalant replaces oxygen in the lungs, suppressing the central nervous system to the extent that breathing stops.  Brain damage from prolonged use. | Over the time, users must inhale more and more of the substance to obtain the same effects.  Highly addictive both physically and psychologically. |
| **Hallucinogens** **Phencyclidine** is a synthetic drug.  **LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide** isodorless, colorless.  **Ecstasy or MDMA** (methylenedioxy methamphetamine), tablets or capsules.  **Psilocybin –** is the active ingredient in mushrooms and chemically similar to LSD.  **Peyote and Mescaline** is the primary ingredient of peyote cactus. Mescaline is produced as a powder, capsules, or liquid and may be inhaled or injected | Distortion of reality – user may report “seeing sounds” and “hearing colors”.  Numbness and/or a sense of detachment from one’s surroundings.  Delusions and hallucinations.  Extreme sense of happiness and excitability. | Schizophrenia, severe depression, feelings of panic, confusion, suspiciousness, anxiety, and loss of control.  Severe mood swings and paranoia.  Impaired thinking and judgment leading to irrational behavior and accidents.  Unexpected and unexplained outbursts of violence.  Genetic changes.  Depression, coupled with suicidal tendencies.  Numerous cases of over-exertion followed by heart failure, convulsions, or death have been reported. | Highly addictive both physically and psychologically. |

**3. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Употребление наркотиков - это серьезное заболевание современного общества.
2. Молодые люди, которые еще не способны осознать риск, которому они себя подвергают, составляют самую большую группу людей, употребляющих наркотики.
3. Огромное количество заболеваний, несчастных случаев и преступлений становятся следствием употреблений наркотиков.
4. Наркотик – это химическое вещество, которое оказывает влияние на внутренние органы человека.
5. Наркотики вызывают необратимые изменения в мозгу человека и приводят к потере самоконтроля, а также способности адекватно воспринимать окружающую действительность.
6. Передозировка большинства наркотиков может иметь летальные последствия для человека.

**Text 3**

**Smoking is a Drug Addiction**

**1. Speak on the questions.**

1. What do you know about the history of Tabaco smoking?
2. Where did it come from?
3. What was it used for?
4. How and where does it grow?
5. What are the reasons of smoking in our time?
6. How people try to give up smoking?
7. What is the most effective way of giving up smoking?
8. To whom is smoking the most dangerous?

**2. Work with the vocabulary. Match the English phrases connected with smoking addiction with their Russian equivalents.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1 | to be well aware | 1. вдыхать что-то |
| 2 | to affect mind and body | 1. угнетать вкусовые рецепторы |
| 3 | to increase heart rate | 1. подавлять аппетит |
| 4 | to be released into the blood stream | 1. оставлять следы на зубах |
| 5 | to relieve stress | 1. воздействовать на мозг и тело |
| 6 | to inhale something | 1. уменьшить стресс |
| 7 | to suppress appetite | 1. испытывать тягу |
| 8 | to experience cravings | 1. поступать в кровяной поток |
| 9 | to reduces fertility | 1. хорошо знать |
| 10 | to stain your teeth | 1. увеличить частоту сердечных сокращений |
| 11 | to dull taste buds | 1. уменьшать способность к деторождению |

**3. Read the text and translate it.**

Smoking is a popular activity for many people who continue to enjoy it even though they are well aware of the health risks.  The main reason for this is nicotine addiction. Tobacco contains nicotine – an extremely powerful stimulant for addiction, which affects both the mind and the body. It increases heart rate and breathing and causes a surge of adrenaline which gives that ‘buzz’ that smokers enjoy.

Psychologically, it causes the smoker to feel relaxed as well as stimulated which is due to the production of a chemical called Dopamine. Dopamine is released into the blood stream, which causes feelings of pleasure and wellbeing. Your body becomes accustomed to these effects and its tolerance increases. This means that you require larger amounts or in this case, smoke more cigarettes in order to have the same effects. This is why it is very difficult to give up smoking.

Different people may be accustomed to smoking. Young people are attracted to smoking as they see it is a sign of being grown up or a statement of being cool and sophisticated. Others do it as a form of rebellion or fitting in with their peer group. Smoking is also popular with adults, some of whom started when they were young and are still smoking well into middle age or older.

Smokers claim that it helps them to relax or gives them an energy boost or ‘rush’. They argue that it relieves stress, increases concentration, in the case of women, reduces their appetite, and helps them to lose weight. Some smokers find that it calms their nerves or energizes them, especially if they smoke first thing in the morning.

Tobacco smoke contains nicotine, tar, carbon monoxide and other chemicals which when inhaled, increases heart rate, blood pressure and respiration. It causes a surge in energy, which is due to the release of adrenaline. This causes that energy boost and acts upon insulin production, which smokers believe suppresses their appetite. Other physical effects include a dry mouth, a decrease in urine production and dizziness.

What happens then is that you become used to the effects of smoking and experience cravings or unpleasant withdrawal symptoms when you do not. Therefore, you light up again in order to prevent these symptoms. Your mind and body develop a tolerance to the effects of nicotine, which means that you need to smoke more and more cigarettes to get these effects as well as stopping any cravings. It can get to the point where you are constantly smoking throughout the day.

If you go for a certain period of time without a cigarette then you will find that you are anxious, restless and literally, ‘gasping’ for a smoke. It is not the type of habit, in which you can have the occasional cigarette. Most people find that they smoke either heavily or not at all.

The risks are well documented and can be fatal. Smoking causes lung cancer, heart disease, bronchitis, poor circulation, reduces fertility (both men and women) and increases the risks of many other diseases. There are particular problems for women who smoke during pregnancy which include risk of miscarriage, stillbirth, birth defects, low birth weight and poor development in the child.

If you have children there is the risk of them inhaling ‘second hand smoke’ which causes health problems such as asthma and ear, nose and throat infections. They may also go on to be smokers themselves when they are older. Second hand smoke or ‘passive smoking’ is another issue, which is open to debate. There are arguments for and against this but it is claimed that there are health risks from inhaling someone’s cigarette smoke.

Smoking is expensive, stains your teeth and clothes, dulls your taste buds and sense of smell and overall, is considered socially unacceptable.

**4. Decide whether the statements are true or false.**

1. People usually know about consequences of smoking.

2. Nicotine is a mild stimulant for addiction.

3. A chemical called Dopamine is a source of pleasure.

4. A wish to get more pleasure is the main reason for not giving up smoking.

5. Only very special people can become smokers.

6. Young people want to look grown-up and experienced.

7. Some smokers say that cigarettes keep them fit.

8. Smoking helps to stand hunger and not to gain weight.

9. Body and mind of the smoker get used to the effect of nicotine and claim more.

10. Tobacco is very useful for pregnant women.

11. “Second hand smoking” means that first a person takes a cigarette by the first hand and then by the second.

**5. Work in pairs or in groups. Prepare a story about your attitude to smoking in 7-10 sentences and present it to your partners.**

**Unit 3**

**Text 1**

**Drug Trafficking**

**1. Before you read the next text, work in small groups or in pairs and discuss the questions.**

1. Do you know how drug trafficking is punished in different countries?
2. Why do you think the usage and selling of different drugs are punished differently?
3. How is drug trafficking punished in your country?

**Vocabulary**

1. drug prohibition law – закон, запрещающий наркотики
2. a felony – убийство с отягчающими обстоятельствами
3. to exceed the amount – превышать количество
4. to face drug distribution charges – быть обвиненным в распространении наркотиков
5. to plead guilty to a less serious charge – признать себя виновным в менее серьезном обвинении

6. to be released on parole – освободиться условно-досрочно

**1. Read the text and translate it.**

Drug trafficking is a global illicit involving the cultivation, manufacture, distribution and sale of substances which are subject to drug prohibition law. Drug distribution or trafficking laws penalize the selling, transportation, and illegal import of unlawful controlled substances, such as marijuana, cocaine, methamphetamines, and other illegal drugs.

The punishment for drug trafficking can vary widely depending on several factors including type and amount of drugs, geographic area of distribution , and whether children were targeted. Sentences for drug distribution and trafficking can generally range from 3-5 years to life in prison.

Drug trafficking or distribution is a felony, and is a more serious crime than drug possession. A person can be convicted of drug trafficking if a person manufacture, transport, sell or distribute illegal drugs or if police suspect that the person intends to sell them. If you have drugs in your possession and the amount you have exceeds the legally determined trafficking amount, you can be found guilty of drug trafficking. If you are found with a large amount of drugs or cash at the time of your arrest, it is likely you will be facing drug distribution charges.

Drug trafficking charges are very serious, and anyone convicted of these crimes can find themselves facing years or decades in prison. Drug trafficking convictions, even for first offenders, typically result in prison sentences that last over a year. A conviction for trafficking can easily result in a prison sentence of 10 years or more, though some states have significantly higher penalties than others - life sentences.

The fines associated with drug trafficking are also serious. They may be very high depending on the amount and kind of drugs.

Probation sentences are possible in some trafficking cases, but typically only as a part of a plea bargain where the accused agrees to plea guilty to a less serious charge. People sentenced to probation have to meet specific conditions ordered by the court, such as being monitored by probation officer, submitting to random drug testing, not leaving the state without the probation officer’s permission, and not breaking any more laws. Probation sentences usually last 12 months and sentences of three years or more are possible.

Drug trafficking laws often impose mandatory minimum sentences. This means that a person convicted must serve a specified amount of time and cannot be released on parole until that time has passed. If, for example, you are sentenced to 10 years in prison for drug trafficking and your state has a three year mandatory minimum, you cannot be paroled before you finish serving at least three years in prison.

Drug distribution or trafficking also applies to the illegal distribution of prescription drug, such as pain killers or sleeping pills. When a state or federal government classifies a substance as “controlled”, it generally means that the use and distribution of the substance is governed by law.

**2. Match the words from the text with their definitions.**

1. substance, 2. life sentence, 3. felony, 4. fine, 5. offender,

6. sentence, 7. drugs, 8.possession.

7. drug, 8.possession

a. an illegal substance that some people smoke or inject for the physical and mental effects it has;

b. the act of committing a serious crime such as murder or rape;

c. a sum of money that must be paid as punishment for breaking a law or a rule;

d. to be sentenced to stay in prison till death;

e. the punishment given by a court;

f. a type of solid, liquid, or gas that has particular qualities;

g. something that you own or have with you at a particular time;

h. a person who commits a crime.

**3. Match the words to their synonymic words or phrases.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. illicit | 1. to be free |
| 1. charges | 1. to be going to do something |
| 1. to intend | 1. analgesics |
| 1. to be convicted | 1. special terms of punishment |
| 1. drug trafficking | 1. accusation |
| 1. distribution of something | 1. illegal |
| 1. pain killers | 1. spreading of something |
| 1. probation | 1. to be sentenced |
| 1. to manufacture | 1. selling of drugs |
| 1. to be released | 1. to produce something |

**4. Read the text again and discuss the cluster with your partner using questions as the key topics.**

**Text 2**

**Legalization of Drugs – the Way Out**

**1. Answer the questions.**

1. What is the origin of the word “legalization”?
2. Define the root and suffixes of the word “legalization”. What part of speech do they belong to?
3. What does “legalization of drugs” mean?
4. What aspects does the legalization in different countries can depend on?

**Vocabulary**

1. To have common feature - иметь общие черты
2. To bear many similarities – иметь сходство
3. To seek possible way out - искать возможный выход
4. To repeal the law - пересмотреть закон
5. To attract supporters - привлечь сторонников
6. To justify restrictions - оправдать ограничения
7. To compare to existing laws - сравнить с существующими законами
8. To support the use of fines - поддержать использование штрафов
9. To remove criminal penalties - отменить уголовное наказание

**2. Match the phrases in English (1-9) to their Russian equivalents (a-i).**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. to have common feature | 1. пересмотреть закон |
| 1. to bear many similarities | 1. иметь сходство |
| 1. to seek possible way out | 1. оправдать ограничения |
| 1. to repeal the law | 1. сравнить с существующими законами |
| 1. to attract supporters | 1. отменить уголовное наказание |
| 1. to justify restrictions | 1. поддержать использование штрафов |
| 1. to compare to existing laws | 1. привлечь сторонников |
| 1. to support the use of fines | 1. иметь общие черты |
| 1. to remove criminal penalties | 1. искать возможный выход |

**3. Read the text below and find synonyms to the words and word combinations.**

a) a supporter

b) a ban

c) to change the law (2)

d) the most eloquent

e) mitigation

f) punishment

g) authority observation

h) choose the best from two evils

**About History of Drug Legalization**

The cultivation, use and trade of [psychoactive](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Psychoactive) and other [drugs](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Drug) are known from  the moment when [civilization](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Civilization) appeared. So drug laws have been a common feature of human law for several hundreds of years and today's fight against drug abuse bears many similarities to earlier drug laws. During the last century the problem of illegal usage, production and selling drugs has become wide-spread and different specialists on international and local level seek possible ways out. The legalization is considered to be one of them.

Various proponents of drug liberalization wish to repeal drug laws for [reasons](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Arguments_for_and_against_drug_prohibition) ranging from [individual rights](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Individual_rights)-based defenses of [liberty](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Liberty), to serious  arguments against the economic and social outcomes of drug prohibition. So, starting from the 20th century, large organized movements try to overturn existing drug laws formed around the world. The most vocal of these groups exist in countries with [liberal democrac](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Liberal_democracies)y, and typically attract liberal supporters. They seek the repeal or softening of drug prohibition laws, most commonly  [marijuana](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Marijuana) but also including other [controlled substances](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Controlled_substance) such as alcohol, tobacco, opiates, stimulants, and others.

Drug liberalization proponents hold differing reasons to support liberalization, and have differing policy proposals. The two most common positions are drug legalization and drug decriminalization.

**Drug legalization**

Drug legalization calls for the elimination of government control of specified (or all) drugs. Proponents of drug legalization typically either view drug prohibition as being inherently immoral, or alternatively may agree that some restrictions on drug availability can be justified but feel that drug prohibition does not work in practice.

Proposed schemes range from full legalization which would completely remove all forms of government control, to intermediate versions such as regulated legalization, where drugs would be legalized, but under a system of government control. This scheme might mean for instance that users would have to acquire a "dangerous drugs license" in order to purchase particular drugs, and might restrict the amount that could be purchased at one time, or the form that certain drugs would be supplied in. The regulated legalization system would probably have a range of restrictions for different drugs, depending on their perceived risk, so while some less dangerous drugs would be sold over the counter in pharmacies, drugs with greater risks of harm might only be available for sale in licensed premises where use could be monitored and emergency medical care is available.

**Drug decriminalization**

Drug decriminalization calls for reduced control and penalties compared to existing laws. Proponents of drug decriminalization generally support the use of [fines](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Fine_(penalty)) or other punishment to replace [prison](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Prison) terms, and often propose systems whereby illegal drug users who are caught would be fined, but would not receive a permanent criminal record as a result. A central feature of drug decriminalization is the notion of [harm reduction](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Harm_reduction).

Drug decriminalization is in some ways an intermediate between prohibition and legalization, and has been criticized as being "the worst of both worlds". According to it, drug sales would still be illegal, but some criminal penalties for using and production of some kinds of drugs would be removed and this might cause some people to choose not to use drugs.

**4**. **Read the text again. Decide whether the statements true or false.**

1. Drugs have become known not long ago.

2. The drug problem has become vitally important nowadays.

3. Different movements in different countries have the same point of view on the ways of combating drugs.

4. The idea of drug legalization is popular mostly in the countries with non-liberal regimes.

5. The regulated legalization supposes that drugs would be legalized, but under a system of government control.

6. According to the legalization scheme heavy drugs might only be available for sale in licensed premises where use could be monitored and emergency medical care is available.

7. Drug decriminalization means that criminals will have lighter punishment for drug abuse crimes.

**5. Work in pairs. Make summary of the text in 5-7 sentences and reproduce it to your partner.**

**6. Match the ideas (a-e) to the texts about legalization in different countries (1-5):**

1. To cure but not to imprison
2. Allows the largest amount of drug to have
3. Everyone should define how to live
4. Nearly half of the population stands for legalization
5. The connivance of authorities

1. Drug liberalization movements can be observed in specific countries. For example, the [Argentine Supreme court](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Supreme_Court_of_Argentina) declared in a landmark ruling that it was "unconstitutional" to prosecute citizens for having drugs for their personal use - "adults should be free to make lifestyle decisions without the intervention of the state".

2. The cultivation of [cannabis](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Cannabis_(drug)) is currently illegal in [Canada](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Canada), with exceptions only for [medical usage](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Medical_marijuana). However, the use of cannabis by the general public is tolerated to a certain degree and varies depending on location and jurisdiction, and a vigorous campaign to legalize cannabis is underway nation-wide. The [Globe and Mail](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Globe_and_Mail) Agency reported that a poll found that 47% of Canadians agreed with the statement that "The use of marijuana should be legalized".

3. The [Czech Republic](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Czech_Republic) adopted a new law that allows a person to possess up to 15 grams of marijuana or 1.5 grams of heroin without facing criminal charges. These amounts are higher than in any other European country, making the Czech Republic one of the most liberal country in the world in the issue of drug liberalization.

4.The drug policy of the [Netherlands](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Netherlands) is based on 2 principles: drug use is a [public health](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Public_health) issue, not a [criminal](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Criminal) matter; the distinction between [hard and soft drugs](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Hard_drugs) is legally defining.

Cannabis remains a controlled substance in the Netherlands and both possession and production for personal use are still [misdemeanors](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Misdemeanor), punishable by fine. [Cannabis coffee shops](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Cannabis_coffee_shop) are also illegal according to the statutes. However, in practice a policy of non-enforcement has led to a situation when the drug taking has become widely used, and the courts have ruled against the government when individual cases were prosecuted.

5. [Portugal](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Portugal) has become the first European country to abolish all criminal penalties for personal drug possession and drug users were to be targeted with [therapy](http://www.thefullwiki.org/Drug_therapy) rather than prison sentences. Research commissioned in the five years after the start of decriminalization, found out that illegal drug use by teenagers had declined, the rate of HIV infections among drug users had dropped, deaths related to heroin and similar drugs had been cut by more than half, and the number of people seeking treatment for drug addiction had doubled.

**7. Read the text about legalization of drugs and find an odd word in some lines of the text. There are lines, which don’t contain the odd word. For example: line 1 – the odd word is “of”**

1/ The question **of** whether to legalize drugs or not is a very controversial

2/ and the important issue. Drugs affect so many areas of society. Several groups

3/ have formed and spoken out regarding in their position. Speaking out against

4/ drug legalization is the first step in helping to deliver along the credible,

5/ consistent message about the many risks and costs of the legalization of drugs

6/ to people if they are interested in solving this problem.

7/ The government has made some several efforts to control drugs and their

8/ users. However, to most of society, the drug problem appears against to be out

9/ of hand. Others see potential profit in legalizing drugs and still others

10/ simply believe that individual rights to take drugs should be protected of.

11/ The legalization concept appeals to people who are looking out for simple

12/ solutions to the devastating problem of drug abuse. Society’s answer

13/ to the problem is to trick the drug user by giving him what he wants.

14/ People believe that ever making drugs legal will take away the temptation

15/ to use them. This idea is wrong and far from logical. If drugs are been

16/ legalized then they will be the more accessible to the young, addicted,

17/ and ignorant. The only resulting effect will be a negative one.

18/ There are no some positive aspects of putting drugs on the streets with

19/ a label reading “legal”. Legalizing with drugs would have a devastating

20/ result that would never affect society as a whole.

**8. Present your report on legalization of drugs. Some countries have already legalized drugs and there is great polemics in others whether to legalize drugs or not. Find out more information on this topic in the Internet. Make your point of view on the problem. Is there any sense to legalize drugs? What are the consequences of legalizing? Present your ideas in class.**

**These phrases may be of some use for you during the discussion:**

I would like to present my idea of ….

I would like to stress that….

The thing is that ….

What is the reason for….?

What may be the consequences of ….?

What is your point of view on ….?

How does it happen that…?

What are the ways of…?

Going back to my last point….

Would you mind explaining your point of view?

**Text 3**

**United Nations Office on Drug and Crime (UNODC)**

**1 Work in pairs in small groups. Study the questions and prepare answers about UNO. Compete with other groups and find out which group can make the most correct and full information.**

1. When was the UN organized?
2. What countries were the first members?
3. What are the main goals of the UN?
4. What is the structure of the UN?
5. What questions does the UN consider?
6. What is the right of veto in the UN?
7. Who is an official representative of Russia in the UN now?

**2. Skim the text and write down five questions to it. Exchange your papers with the partner and answer the questions.**

**What does United Nations do to struggle crime and illicit drugs?**

The United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime (UNODC) is a global leader in struggle against illicit drugs and international crime. UNODC mobilizes and promotes regional and transnational cooperation to confront the growing threat to security posed by the convergence of organized crime, drug trafficking, corruption and terrorism. UNODC also works to educate the world about the dangers of drug abuse and to strengthen international action against drug production, trafficking and drug-related crime. In order to achieve this, UNODC carries out a broad range of initiatives, including alternative development projects, illicit crop monitoring and anti-money laundering programs.

Established in 1997 through a merger of United Nations Drug Control Program and the Centre for International Crime Prevention, UNODC has approximately 500 staff members worldwide. Headquartered in Vienna, UNODC operates 52 field offices covering more than 150 countries, as well as liaison offices in New and Brussels.

UNODC is mandated by international conventions and UN resolutions, to assist Member States in implementing UN treaties on drug control, transnational organized crime, corruption and criminal justice reform. It also works to suppress terrorism and human trafficking. The Regional Office for Central Asia (ROCA) assists the five Central Asian states in reducing the use and trade of illicit drugs, in fighting organized crime, and in preventing and prosecuting terrorism.

**3. Translate sentences from Russian into English:**

1. В докладе, представленном ООН, отмечалось, что борьба с незаконным оборотом наркотиков достается государствам дорогой ценой. В ходе этой борьбы гибнет много молодых сотрудников правоохранительных органов, которые ведут борьбу с незаконным оборотом наркотиков.

2. Выполняя резолюцию ООН о борьбе с незаконным оборотом наркотиков и организованной преступностью, правительство страны приняло два важных документа - политическую декларацию и план действий. Эти документы включают в себя широкомасштабные меры в области укрепления правовой системы, укрепления криминальной судебной системы и борьбы с наркотиками и ВИЧ/СПИД.

3. Специальная Комиссия ООН приняла резолюцию , озаглавленную "Прогресс в деле усиления международной поддержки государствам Западной Африки в их усилиях по борьбе с незаконным оборотом наркотиков". В данной резолюции государствам-членам и соответствующим международным организациям предлагается активизировать свои усилия в поддержку государств Африки, в наибольшей степени затронутых этой проблемой.

4. В целях осуществления Политической декларации о борьбе против незаконного оборота наркотиков, организованной преступности, терроризма и других серьезных преступлений в Карибском бассейне ООН решила осуществить в этом регионе такую же инициативу, которую она провела в Азии в целях борьбы с незаконной торговлей наркотиками.

**4. Work in pairs. Render the text in English and reproduce it to your partner.**

Употребление наркотиков - серьезное заболевание современного общества, оказывающее губительное влияние на определенные группы людей молодого и среднего возраста. К сожалению, большой процент употребляющих наркотики – это подростки, не способные осознать риск, которому они себя подвергают. Употребление наркотиков среди представителей этой группы населения выливается в миллионы заболеваний и несчастных случаев.

Употребление наркотиков является причиной наиболее серьезных социальных проблем человечества. Среди них насилие, стресс и жестокое обращение с детьми, вождение в состоянии наркотического опьянения. Кроме того, растет число бездомных и повышается уровень преступности. Наркотики наносят вред еще не рожденным детям и разрушают семьи.

Наркотик – это химический состав, который, не являясь продуктом питания, оказывает влияние на состояние вашего тела. Существуют такие наркотики как медицинские препараты и болеутоляющие, которые назначаются врачом и их можно купить в аптеке, но существует также и другой вид - произведенные человеком наркотики, которые чрезвычайно опасны. Они включают амфитамины, анаболические стероиды, марихуану, летучие вещества наркотического действия, кокаин и героин. Оказывая кратковременный эйфорический эффект, они вызывают необратимые изменения в мозгу человека и зачастую приводят к потере самоконтроля и способности адекватно воспринимать окружающую действительность. И каким бы абсурдным это не казалось, но на сегодняшний день люди в огромных количествах производят наркотики для потребления человеком.

Существует множество причин, объясняющих употребление наркотиков. Среди них и социальные, и экономические, и психологические. Иногда это попытка уйти от реальности, иногда – желание показаться взрослым и независимым. Однако, иллюзия быстро заканчивается, остаются многочисленные проблемы, которые ведет за собой эта пагубная привычка.

В современной медицине есть различные способы борьбы с наркотической зависимостью, но лучший из них – предотвращение употребления наркотиков. Значительную роль в этом процессе играют различные программы профилактики, применяющиеся в школах и вузах, а также работа средств массовой информации и международных организаций в этом направлении.

**Unit 4**

**Text 1**

**Russia in Combating Drug Abuse**

**Vocabulary**

1. mass media - средства массовой информации
2. to integrate into the global drug market – интегрироваться в мировой рынок наркотиков
3. to become the primary care – быть первостепенным предметом внимания
4. before the collapse – до состояния полного разрушения
5. enormous negative impact – огромное отрицательное влияние
6. rehabilitation of former drug takers – реабилитация бывших наркоманов
7. drugs addiction treatment – лечение наркотической зависимости
8. to carry out the work on combating drug abuse – выполнять работу по борьбе со злоупотреблением наркотиков

**1. Work with the dictionary and translate the following phrases into Russian.**

1. mass media
2. to integrate into the global drug market
3. to become the primary care
4. before the collapse
5. negative impact
6. enormous negative impact
7. rehabilitating former drug takers
8. devoted to the consequences
9. addiction treatment
10. carry out the work on combating drug abuse

**2. Match the ideas A-F with the passages of the text 1-6.**

A. The mass media work

B. Official measures

C. Now and then

D. Country’s concern

E. Preventive measures

F. Danger to the society

1. Due to the Russian mass media, Russia has one of the fastest growing drug problems in the world nowadays. It has now integrated into the global drug market with links to the synthetic drug markets of Western Europe and the Far East, as well as the booming heroin trade from Central Asia. Drugs are now trafficked in all regions of Russia and their use in affecting the youthful population. In recent years crime activities connected with drugs have become the primary care of the state attention.
2. Historically, before the collapse of the Soviet Union, Russia was considered to be a trans-shipment country for drug smuggling from Central Asia to Europe. Now it has developed into one of the major drug consumers itself with several millions of drug users all over the country.
3. The rise of the Russian drug trade has an enormous negative impact on Russia’s demographic situation. AIDS, tuberculosis and other diseases associated with the spread of drugs is having significant demographic impact on the Russian population. The drug trade threatens the labor force of the country because it affects the young and the working-age population.
4. The government of Russian Federation pays great attention to the growing problem. It works in a great amount of directions, which are coordinated by the Government’s Commission on Fighting Drug Abuse and Illegal Turnover. Its work is also assisted by the RF Ministry of Interior, the RF Public Health Ministry and the State Customs Committee, and many public organizations which carry out the work on combating drug abuse, preventing drug taking and rehabilitating former drug takers. The special Federal Program “Complex Measures to Withstand Abuse and Illegal Drugs Trade” was worked out and successfully implemented by central and local authorities.
5. As the most drug takers are of 13-18 years, the great care is taken of the youth. The mass anti-drug work is carried out at schools where special lessons are devoted to the consequences of drug taking. The seminars which are called “When Trouble is Knocking on Your Door” are hold with their parents, providing information about the most widely used drugs, offering the ways on prevention of drug abuse, specially stressing the peculiarities of psychology of children and teenagers using drugs. Great amount of rehabilitation centers were established in Russia, where patients renounce their addiction to drugs and return to usual life after this hard disease.
6. Well-known Russian specialists are engaged in the area of addiction treatment, who speak in mass media, give lectures in educational institutions, and discuss the problem in popular TV programs.

**3. Revise the text. Work in pairs and answer the questions to the text.**

a) What are people mostly affected by drugs?

b) How drugs are connected with crime?

c) What has recently changed in the position of Russia in the world drugs market?

d) How can drugs affect the economy of the country?

e) What are the activities of the government?

f) What do schools do to prevent drugs abuse?

g) How does mass media take part in the fight with drug misuse?

h) Have you ever taken part in any activities connected with combating drugs?

i) Have you listened to the lecture or seen the program on this theme?

j) What films, songs or stories about famous stars, connected with drugs, do you know?

**Text 2**

**Strategy of Combating Drugs in Russia**

**1. Read some extracts from the Russian President’s speech that he addressed to the delegates of the International Drug Enforcement Conference (IDEC) in Moscow. Answer the questions:**

1. What was the conference devoted to?
2. What is the position of Russia concerning drugs?

c) What was done for combating drug abuse in Russia?

d) What is to be done?

The delegates include the heads of drug control agencies from more than 120 countries, as well as heads and representatives of international organizations, including the United Nations, Shanghai Cooperation Organization, and Collective Security Treaty Organization.

\* \* \*

President of Russia: Ladies and Gentlemen, friends,

It is a great pleasure to welcome you all to this anniversary 30th International Drug Enforcement Conference.

The drugs trade has become a global challenge to the entire international community, and for some countries has become a national tragedy. The drugs trade is a breeding ground for organized crime, smuggling, and illegal migration. Even sadder and more dangerous, it is also a breeding ground for terrorism.

Russia supports the UN’s central coordinating role in combating drug trafficking. The United Nations has a tremendously important part to play in this work.

It is extremely important to reach the goals that were set by the Political Declaration and the Plan of Action to Counter the World Drug Problem, adopted at the 64th UN General Assembly, namely, to reduce production of the most dangerous drugs, including heroin and cocaine, around the world by 2019.

Russia has always been an advocate of closer cooperation between law enforcement agencies in combating the drugs threat. This concerns above all efforts to suppress international drug trafficking, exchange operational information, and train personnel.

As part of our obligations under the international anti-drugs conventions, we are active in helping to develop the human resources capabilities of drugs control and police agencies in many countries, from Asia to Central America. Last year, more than 600 specialists from our partner countries received ongoing professional training in Russia.

Our common priorities include planning and carrying out joint anti-drugs operations. Russia has quite a lot of experience in this area. For example, through our cooperation with Kyrgyzstan over these last two years only, we have shut down 35 wholesale heroin supply channels.

More than 1,500 crimes were brought to light and around 500 kilograms of narcotic substances and more than 750 kilograms of precursors were confiscated.

Another key area for action is to destroy the drugs trade’s financial base. This is something you all say too. The experts estimate that the trade in opiates alone, calculated using the final sales value method, is worth more than $60 billion. Providing reciprocal legal assistance and expanding the exchange of information on suspicious bank accounts, deposits, investments and property would help to break down the drugs production infrastructure.

We also are to work more closely in the important area of preventing leaks and illegal trade of precursors. This work should continue together with the UN Office on Drugs and Crime, the UN International Narcotics Control Board, and the business community.

It is important to strengthen the public-private partnership in this area, and together with the International Narcotics Control Board continue the work to draw up the guidelines for a voluntary code of conduct for businesses engaged in producing special substances and components.

At the same time, we all know that security methods alone will not resolve the problem of illegal drugs use. In pursuing our set objectives, we must therefore work together more actively with civil society and business circles too.

Surely, we also have to make broader use of the latest drug addiction treatment methods that various countries are using, and carry out educational, treatment, rehabilitation and social re-integration programs for people with drug addictions, especially young people.

Thank you very much for your attention.

**2. Read the text again and find English equivalents for the following words and word combinations.**

1. Плодородная почва
2. Мировая проблема
3. Все международное сообщество
4. Производство особых веществ и их компонентов
5. Незаконная торговля исходными составляющими
6. Взаимная правовая помощь
7. Достичь целей
8. Контрабанда и незаконная миграция

**3. Make the summary of the text and present it to your colleague.**

**4. Work in pairs or in groups of 3-4. What else can you suggest for combating drug abuse in our country and in the world? Make grounds for your point of view.**

**Text 3**

**Foreign Opinion**

**Before you start working at the next text match the words and phrases in the first box with their equivalents in the second one.**

**1. Before you start working at the next text match the words and phrases in the first box with their equivalents in the second one.**

1. Failed policies, 2. to devise an effective strategy, 3. a substantive commitment, 4. to provide the financial and human resources, 5. to respond, 6. to reduce, 7. regardless of supply, 8. to warn people ,

9. substitution therapy, 10. to mitigate the harm

a. To soften the consequences, b. unsuccessful activities, c. the exchange some medicines in treatment, d. to fulfill positive planning, e. to ask somebody not to do something, f. to give monetary and staff assistance,

g. to answer, h.to lessen, i. irrespectively of the source, j. actual wish to do something

**2. In the following text, a foreign politician offers his recommendations on drug abuse strategy in Russia. Read the text and express your point of view to your partner on the mentioned issues with the help of the phrases.**

**I agree with recommendation to …**

**I think it is unreasonable to…**

**I don’t think that it is necessary to …**

“Russia will have to break with the failed policies of the past Soviet-era to devise an effective strategy to combat drug abuse. Building on widely recognized “best practices” worldwide, such a strategy must include, at a minimum:

• A substantive commitment to provide the financial and human resources to combat drug abuse and respond effectively to the costs arising from it.

• Measures to reduce demand for drugs regardless of supply, including therapeutic programs to treat and counsel drug abusers, nonjudgmental educational initiatives to warn people, especially youth, about the dangers of drugs, and harm-reduction measures, such as substitution therapy, to worn addicts from the most dangerous drugs and mitigate the harm their habit can inflict on themselves and others.

• A modern drug-treatment system staffed by qualified specialists and elimination of compulsory treatment of addicted individuals.

• A public-private partnership to combat drug abuse and its consequences that include civil society, such as nongovernmental organizations, religious institutions, and school-based parental associations, as an active and co-equal participant.

• Comprehensive, accurate collection of data on the scope and etiology of drug abuse and related pathologies, such as HIV/AIDS and hepatitis C as a basis for evidence-based public policy.

**Text 4**

**If Your Friend is in Trouble …**

**1. Read the text and translate it.**

**If Your Friend is a Drug Taker What is to be done?**

Suddenly you notice that your friend has changed. First a little, then more and more. May be it is drug misuse and it is your turn to help him out. If someone you know has a problem with drugs, you should realize that drug addiction is a medical disease and it should be cared medically, especially if a person is a heavy user. However, if your friend is yet at the begging of the ‘drug way’, you can try to prevent his possible addiction or positively contribute his treatment.

If you’ve got any suspicions, make some observations to be sure that your facts are true before you take any steps.

There are some signs that can follow drug misuse:

* + sudden changes of mood from happy and alert to sullen and moody;
  + unusual irritability or aggression;
  + loss of appetite;
  + loss of interest in hobbies, sport, studying or friends;
  + bouts of drowsiness or sleepiness;
  + increased evidence of telling lies or furtive behavior;
  + unexplained loss of money or belongings from home
  + unusual smells, stains or marks on the body or clothes
  + unusual powders, tablets, capsules, scorched tinfoil or needles or syringes.

First, show him that you are caring about him and will support him whatever the circumstances are. Try to stick to him and do not turn your back on him as if he is in a lower position. It will have terrible effect if you start blame him off to his face or to other people – in this way you may lose him as a friend forever. Think about people you know who may be of some help.

You may try to talk to him, but remember – never try it if he is just under the influence of drugs! It is useless and even dangerous. Choose proper time for the talk and be firm, consistent and caring during it. Give him some reasons for rejecting the misuse of drugs. For example, tell him that is illegal and it will inevitably bring to troubles with police and law. Tell him that it will have a destructing effect on his health and reflect on the health of his future children, making them heavily ill with chronicle diseases.

Try to discover why he has used drugs. Once you know this, you can try to tackle with the cause rather than the symptoms. If you have found the cause, try to assure him that it is a passing phase and is not the reason to make damage to himself.

It is very important not to exert pressure on a drug taker – he will have to make his own decisions. If he wants, accompany him to seek help from a doctor, clinic, or counselor. If he doesn’t want try to assure him that it is necessary and vitally important for him.

It can be hard work helping someone with drugs. But do we have friends only to enjoy ourselves?

**2. Work in pairs and answer the questions:**

1. Do you know anybody who is taking drugs? How can you know about it?
2. Have you ever talked about drugs with him or her?
3. Why shouldn’t you exert pressure on him?
4. What did you do to prevent him from addiction?
5. Do you think it is a disease or a bad habit?
6. Do you think it is possible for a person to get rid of this addiction himself?
7. Where do you think it is possible to get drugs?
8. Why do people try drugs for the first time?
9. Do YOU realize that drugs are harmful for YOUR health?

**3. Read the letter of a drug taker to the psychiatric clinic, which is eager to get treatment from drug addiction. Find 10 mistakes in grammar, use of English, spelling or word order.**

Dr. Sergei Losev

Clinic of Psychiatry

Moscow

Russia

Dear Dr. Losev,

My name is Dmitri, I’m 25. I’m a heavy drug taker for 10 years already. I realise that your clinic is my last hope to get rid of this terrible desease.

I don’t have a family because my wife left me as she couldn’t stand the life with a drug taker. I studied at the university for 2 years but later was excluded for drugs. I am unemployed and it is impossible to earn a money for me as every employee makes me to have a drug test and I can’t pass it.

No friends are with me now. We were four classmates in college, all drug takers, and two of us has already gone because of overdose, one dies in the hospital. I am the last. I want to live, to work, to have family and kids.

Please, help me! I would like to take the treatment for drug taking and I’ll do my best not to use drugs ever again.

My uncle is so kind to pay for my treatment in your clinic if I will do it voluntary and consciously. Please, sent me an information about the price and course available.

Hope to hear from you soon,

Dmitri

**4. Hold the meeting of Round table with your classmates. Follow the instructions.**

**Round Table Discussion on the Problem of Combating Drugs**

You are to take part in a wide discussion with your classmates on the drug problem. Beforehand you should choose a chairperson who will conduct the meeting and give the floor to the participants. Everybody takes part, contributing the discussion with his presentation, answers and asks questions. At the end the chairperson should summarize the meeting and thank everybody for participation.

1. **You are to make presentation on any of these topics. If you wish you may take any other topic connected with the drugs.**
2. Why has drug addiction become a problem of global range?
3. Why is it necessary to have drug laws?
4. How does drug-law enforcement work?
5. What can prevent drug abuse?
6. How do drugs work in brain?
7. What treats drug abuse?
8. How much crime is drug-related?
9. Does international drug dealing support terrorism?
10. What is to be done?
11. How do different countries combat drug abuse?

**b) It would be a good idea if your presentation meets the following requirements:**

1. follow the plan: a) introduction, b) the body of the presentation,

c) conclusion;

2. your presentation should take 4-5 min.

3. use the vocabulary of words and phrases given below.

4. suggest a problem question for your fellow-students to discuss.

1. **Useful words and phrases to make a presentation**

While speaking on your topic, try to use the link words and phrases, or sometimes they are called “discourse markers”, which will show how the ideas in your presentation interrelate. Besides they will make your presentation more understandable, colorful and attracting everybody’s attention.

**Introduction:**

My presentation deals with the topic of …; I’ll speak on the topic of….;

I would like to touch upon the problem of; the presentation is intended to;

Let’s start with…

**Main body:**

first of all, secondly, finally, besides,- in addition, furthermore, moreover;

*contrasting:* in contrast, on the other hand, however, alternatively;

*referring to the past*: formerly, traditionally, historically, initially;

**Conclusion:**

as a consequence, therefore, thus, as a result; in fact, clearly, indeed;

in short, summarizing , in other words;

**Your point of view:**

from my point of view, however, in my opinion, I strongly feel that …

to sum up the conclusion, if seems to me that…

**GLOSSARY**

Drug – наркотик, лекарство, средство, лекарственный препарат, медикамент

Drug taking – употребление наркотиков

Drug taker - наркоман

Drug consumer – потребитель наркотиков

Illicit drugs – незаконный оборот наркотиков

Available drugs – доступные наркотики

Drug related crimes – преступления, связанные с наркотиками

Drug trafficking - незаконный оборот, транспортировка и продажа наркотиков, наркотрафик

Drug control – контроль над наркотиками

Abuse - злоупотребление

Drug abuse - наркомания, злоупотребление наркотическими средствами

Alcohol abuse – злоупотребление алкоголем

Abusable drugs - препараты, не разрешенные к применению, наркотики, незаконный оборот наркотиков

Non-abusable drugs – медицинские препараты, разрешенные к применению

Substance abuse disorder – заболевания, связанные с токсикоманией

To addict –увлекаться, пристраститься, “подсесть” на что-то

Addiction – наркомания, зависимость, пристрастие, склонность

Chocolate addiction – пристрастие, злоупотребление шоколадом

Drug addiction treatment – лечение от наркотической зависимости

Tobacco addiction – зависимость от табакокурения

To use – использовать, применять

Heavy user – наркоман, давно и большом количестве использующий наркотики

To use marijuana – использовать марихуану

Misuse – злоупотребление, неправильное использование

Useless – бесполезный

Vital - насущный, жизненно важный

Evitable – очевидный, понятный

Inevitable - неизбежный, неминуемый, неотвратимый

Inevitably will bring to trouble – неизбежно приведет к трагедии

**MODULE VII**

**Chapter 14**

**INTERNATIONAL POLICE ORGANIZATION**

**UNIT 1**

Lead-in

**1. Before reading the text**

Give the definition of international crime.

Name crimes that can be referred to as international.

What is the role of international cooperation nowadays?

**Text 1**

**International Criminal Activity**

**Vocabulary**

1. sophisticated facilities for rapid travel – современные средства, способы для быстрого перемещения

2. currency counterfeiting – фальшивомонетничество

3. to transfer illicit gains abroad – перевод незаконных доходов за границу

4. to lessen the human and material cost of crime – уменьшить человеческие и материальные потери, связанные с преступлениями

5. to further the dissemination and exchange of information –содействовать дальнейшему распространению и обмену информации

6. to authorize the convening – санкционировать созыв

7. to conceal objects or documents – скрыть предметы или документы

8. penologist – специалист по уголовному праву

**1. Skim the text. What factors facilitate the growth of international criminal activity?**

**2. Read the text and match the titles (1 – 6) with the paragraphs (a – e):**

**There is one title that you do not need.**

1. UN work in the field of crime prevention.

2. Standing expert bodies on crime prevention.

3. Participants of the UN Congress.

4. Reasons for growing criminal activity.

5. International crime is not a specific category of offence.

6. International police cooperation.

a) The development of increasingly sophisticated facilities for rapid travel has made it far easier for criminals to move around the world. At the same time, the complex structures of modern societies and the constant growth of international exchanges provide more and more opportunities for international criminal activity (offence), which has now reached alarming proportions. Some offences are covered by international conventions, for instance currency counterfeiting (1929 Convention), and drug trafficking (1988 Convention).

b) The term “international crime", although in common use, does not necessarily refer to a specific category of offence defined in law. Such offences can be classified as “international” because of the behavior of the offenders. For instance, preparations for committing an offence may be made in one country while the actual offence is committed in one or more other countries. To take another example, similar offences may be committed one after the other in several different countries. Thus, an offender may escape across a border after committing his offence. He may transfer his illicit gains abroad or he may conceal objects or documents used to commit the offence in another country.

c) Tracing and arresting such offenders may prove extremely difficult problems. They can arise in connection with exchanging information, identification, international investigations and subsequent extradition. Because of these problems, police departments in different countries must work together if they are to combat international crime successfully.

d) United Nations work in the field of crime prevention and criminal justice has two main purposes: to lessen the human and material cost of crime and its impact on socio-economic development and to promote the observance of international standards and norms in criminal justice. To this end, The United Nations furthers the dissemination and exchange of information, the training of personnel and direct aid to Governments at their request. United Nations research and training activities in the field of crime prevention and control are furthered by the United Nations Social Defense Research Institute, headquartered in Rome, by regional institutions in Asia and Far East, Latin America, the Arab States and Europe.

e) To promote a forum for the presentation of policies and to stimulate progress, the General Assembly in 1950 authorized the convening every five years of a United Nations Congress on the Prevention of Crime and the Treatment of Offenders. Participants in the congresses include criminologists, penologists and senior police officers, as well as experts in criminal law, human rights and rehabilitation. The First Congress held in Geneva in 1955, approved a set of Standard Minimum Rules for the Treatment of Prisoners. The Sixth Congress (Caracas, 1980) dealt with such topics as crime trends and crime prevention strategies, juvenile delinquency, crime and abuse of power.

**3. Answer the questions.**

1. What are the opportunities for international criminal activity?

2. What are the purposes of the UN work in the field of crime prevention?

3. What organizations perform the UN activity in the field of crime prevention?

4. What specialists participated in the congresses?

5. What are the reasons for the police to work together?

**4. Decide whether these statements are true or false.**

1. An offence can be classified as international because of preparations for committing this offence.

2. Globalization provides more opportunities for international criminal activity.

3. To commit the offence in another country an offender may transfer his illicit gains and documents abroad.

4. The only purpose of criminal justice is to intensify the observance of norms in this sphere.

5. The General Assembly decided to convene the United Nations Congress on the Prevention of Crime and the Treatment of Offenders every five years.

**5. Translate the text into Russian.**

According to the interpretation given to Article 3, a political offence is one which is considered to be of a predominantly political nature because of the surrounding circumstances and underlying motives, even if the offence itself is covered by the ordinary criminal law in the country in which it was committed. This interpretation, based on the predominant aspects of the offence is embodied in a resolution adopted by Interpol's General Assembly in 1951. In addition, a resolution adopted in 1984 states that offences are not considered to be political when they are committed outside a “conflict area” and when the victims are not connected with the aims or objectives pursued by the offenders.

**6. Match the words with their synonyms.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. violation | a. power |
| 2. duty | b. to prohibit |
| 3. authority | c. to make smb do smth |
| 4. offence | d. obligation |
| 5. to charge smb with smth | e. to hold |
| 6. to forbid | f. to set free |
| 7. to oblige | g. to accuse |
| 8. to release | h. wrong |
| 9. to conduct | i. infringement |

**Text 2**

**International Cooperation in Criminal Matters**

**Vocabulary**

1. to seek to evade detection – избежать обнаружения

2. reluctance of law enforcement authorities to engage in complicated and expensive investigations– нежелание правоохранительных органов заниматься сложными и дорогостоящими расследованиями

3. to comply with new international standards– соответствовать новым международным стандартам

4. smuggling of migrants and money laundering – контрабандный провоз мигрантов и отмывание денег

5. confiscation of criminal proceeds and asset recovery – конфискация доходов и возвращение активов

6. divergences in approaches and priorities – расхождение, различие в подходах и приоритетах

7. a commitment to the rule of law – приверженность верховенству права

8. an international notice – международное уведомление

9. the diversity of law enforcement structures – многообразие правоохранительных структур

**1. Read the text and find paragraphs that**

a. describe the ability of criminals to avoid arrest

b. prove that organized crime encompasses practically all spheres of human activity

c. stress the importance of international cooperation

d. show the mechanism of international cooperation

e. mention difficulties of international cooperation

f. point out special documents to inform member countries of dangerous criminals

g. prove the commitment to the rule of law and human rights

**2. Make up a list of the international organizations dealing with extradition. What are these organizations? Which countries belong to these organizations?**

1. The emergence and expansion of transnational crime confront all justice systems with some new difficulties. Criminal offences are mobile and often seek to evade detection, arrest and punishment by operating across international borders.

They avoid being caught by taking advantage of those borders and playing on the frequent reluctance of law enforcement authorities to engage in complicated and expensive transnational investigations and prosecutions. That is why the international community now recognizes international cooperation in criminal matters as an urgent necessity. This demands national efforts to comply with new international standards, to encourage convergence and compatibility of national legislation, to introduce complex procedural reforms, and generally to develop a much greater investigation and prosecution capacity at the national level as well as strengthen the capacity to cooperate at the international level.

2. Transnational organized crime is considered one of the main threats to the security of each individual, and it affects the social, economic, political and cultural development of people all over the world. This multilateral phenomenon is observed in different types of activity including: drug trafficking, human trafficking, the arms trade, smuggling of migrants and money laundering. Transnational organized crime itself is by nature a global danger, posing a threat, not only to individual countries, but also to the global community. Therefore the struggle against this evil requires international cooperation, and it is necessary to combine the efforts of all countries and international organizations. Cooperation with colleagues from both distant and nearby countries is one of the key objectives of international activity especially when it concerns joint action against international terrorism, religious extremism,  drug trafficking, human trafficking and other dangerous types of transnational crime. Interaction is carried out both on a multilateral and a bilateral basis. The importance of having an organized means of cooperation is related to issues such as the search for people who are reasonably suspected of having committed crimes and are evading investigation, trial and extradition.

3. The main mechanisms supporting international cooperation are mutual legal assistance, extradition, transfer of prisoners, transfer of proceedings in criminal matters, international cooperation for the purpose of confiscation of criminal proceeds and asset recovery as provided for in the United Nations Convention against Corruption, as well as a number of less formal measures, including measures in the area of international law enforcement cooperation. These mechanisms are based on bilateral or multilateral agreements or arrangements or, in some instances, on national law. The main purpose of the UN Convention against Transnational Organized Crime is to facilitate international cooperation precisely.

4. In spite of the considerable progress accomplished at the bilateral, regional, trans-regional, and international levels, international cooperation in the investigation and prosecution of serious crimes still needs considerable strengthening. Many obstacles still exist. They include sovereignty issues, the diversity of law enforcement structures, the absence of enabling legislation, the absence of channels of communication for the exchange of information, and divergences in approaches and priorities. These problems are often compounded by difficulties in dealing with the varied procedural requirements of each jurisdiction, the competitive attitude that often exists between the agencies involved, language, and human rights and privacy issues.

5. A country’s commitment to the rule of law and the protection of human rights should not be negotiable or bartered against some international cooperation concessions in fighting transnational crime or terrorism. In fact, a commitment to the rule of law can enhance international cooperation in criminal matters. Measures to enforce the rule of law and adherence to international human rights standards are also directly relevant to enhancing international cooperation in matters of extradition, mutual legal assistance, or joint investigations.

6. Whether a country is attempting to prevent organized crime activities, financial and economic crime, computer crime, corruption or terrorism the establishment of better legal bases for international cooperation is prerequisite. Developing stronger bilateral and multi-lateral agreements on mutual legal assistance is also part of the solution. In matters of international cooperation, criminal justice agencies must rely to a large extent on the treaty network developed by their country. To facilitate these efforts the General Assembly adopted a Model Treaty on Mutual Assistance in Criminal Matters. The country may require technical assistance in adopting measures to establish under their domestic law a number of offences called by the conventions and protocols relating to terrorism and other related form of crime, and to ensure that these offences are punishable by appropriate penalties that take into account the grave nature of the offences.

Multilateral Conventions dealing with extradition have been developed within the framework of various regional and other international organizations such as the African Malagasy Common Organization, the Benelux Countries, the Council of Europe, the Commonwealth, the European Union, the Nordic States, the Organization of African States. Extradition provisions are also included in a number of international conventions dealing with specific types of crime, including the UN Convention against Transnational Organized Crime and universal conventions against terrorism.

7. Mutual Legal Assistance, as is the case with extradition, is based on bilateral and multilateral treaties as well as on national legislation that either gives full effect to the relevant treaties or enables mutual assistance in absence of a treaty. Instruments on mutual legal assistance in criminal proceedings have also been adopted within the framework of the Commonwealth, the Council of Europe, the European Union, The Organization of American States, the South-East Asian Region (ASEAN signed on 29 November 2004), the Economic Community of West African States, the Southern African Countries of modalities. These treaties and laws should be reviewed periodically and amended if necessary to keep peace with rapidly evolving practices and challenges in international cooperation.

8. The organization uses a system of international notices (circulars) to inform peace officers in the national bureaus of cases where known criminals abandon their usual residence and travel abroad surreptitiously. The color coded circulars are distributed by Interpol Headquarters to member countries within twenty days of their issue or, in urgent cases, the same day. In the case of a fugitive whose arrest and extradition is requested, a wanted notice containing details of the arrest warrant and the offense committed is circulated.

**3. Give Russian equivalents.**

1. to be subject to penal sanctions

2. to evade investigation and extradition

3. to travel abroad surreptitiously

4. adherence to international human rights standards

5. to confiscate criminal proceeds and assets

6. commitment to the rule of law

**4. Give English equivalents**

1. нежелание проводить судебные преследования

2. возможность оказания взаимопомощи в отсутствии договора

3. принимать во внимание тяжесть совершенных преступлений

4. соответствовать международным нормам

5. содействовать международному сотрудничеству

6. ордер на арест

7. укрепление взаимопомощи

**5. Answer the following “what” questions.**

1. In what way can criminals avoid being caught?

2. What measures should be taken to prevent the expansion of transitional crime?

3. What types of activity are called transitional crime?

4. What obstacles prevent countries from investigation of international crimes?

5. What measures were taken by the General Assembly to facilitate international cooperation?

6. In what way can international notices help Interpol activities?

**6. Decide whether these statements are true or false.**

1. International cooperation demands national efforts to comply with new international standards and to encourage convergence and compatibility of national legislation,

2. The only main mechanisms supporting international cooperation measures is the area of international law enforcement cooperation.

3. The absence of channels of communication for the exchange of information as well as divergences in approaches and priorities make international cooperation impossible.

4. To prevent organized crimes criminal justice agencies must not rely on the treaties but only on bilateral and multi-lateral agreements.

5. Transnational organized crime pose threat to all sphere of human activity.

6. Bilateral and multilateral agreements on mutual legal assistance can prevent organized crime activity

**7. Match the words with their definitions.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. fugitive | a. involving two or more participants |
| 2 compatibility | b. go away from, not intending to return |
| 3. multilateral | c. a poster put up to inform the public of criminals whom the authorities wish to apprehend |
| 4. extradition | d. able to exist together |
| 5. to abandon | e. difficulty or problem that prevents you from achieving something |
| 6. a wanted notice | f. someone who has done something illegal and is trying to avoid being caught by the police |
| 7. obstacle | g. handing over a person from the state where he is a fugitive to the state where he has committed a crime |

**8. Work in pairs. Choose the correct word used in the text. Discuss the answers with your group mate.**

1. International community \_\_\_\_\_ international cooperation in criminal matters as an urgent necessity

a) realize b) appreciate c) recognizes

2. Therefore the struggle against this evil \_\_\_\_\_ international cooperation.

a) involve b) requires c) provide

3. These mechanisms are based on \_\_\_\_\_or multilateral agreements or arrangements or, in some instances, on national law.

a) bilateral b) binding c) interstate

4.\_\_\_\_\_\_ the considerable progress accomplished at the bilateral, regional, trans-regional, and international levels, international cooperation still needs considerable strengthening

a) whether b) as though c) In spite of

5. Measures to enforce \_\_\_\_\_ and adherence to international human rights standards are also directly relevant in matters of extradition, mutual legal assistance, or joint investigations.

a) the conflict of laws b) the rule of law c) the purpose of law

6. The treaties and laws should be reviewed periodically and amended \_\_\_\_\_ in international cooperation.

a) to ban peace b) to disturb peace c) to keep peace

7. Mutual Legal Assistance as is the case with extradition is based on bilateral and multilateral treaties as well as on \_\_\_\_\_ that enables mutual assistance in absence of a treaty.

a) an appropriate committee b) the Armed Forces c) national legislation

8. The color coded circulars \_\_\_\_\_ by Interpol Headquarters to member countries within twenty days of their issue.

a) are distributed b) are discussed c) are interpreted

**9. Match word combinations on the left with their Russian equivalents on the right.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. mutual aid and cooperation | a. осуществлять контроль за выполнением решений |
| 2. to prevent and inhibit crime | b. расширять сотрудничество |
| 3. to undertake any intervention | c. действовать в пределах национальных границ |
| 4. to travel abroad surreptitiously | d. основные признаки состава преступления |
| 5. to request an arrest of a fugitive | e. содействовать и обеспечивать взаимопомощь |
| 6. to ensure and promote mutual assistance | f. подать запрос о выдаче беглого преступника |
| 7. predominant aspects of the offence | g, скрытно путешествовать по стране |
| 8. to operate within national boundaries | h предпринять любое вмешательство |
| 9. to extend cooperation | i. предотвращать и сдерживать преступность |
| 10. to oversee the implementation of decisions | j. взаимопомощь и сотрудничество |

**10. Work in pairs. Read and translate the text “Cooperation guiding principles” and label its parts with the appropriate headings from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| **Flexibility of working methods Respect for national sovereignty Universality Enforcement of ordinary criminal law**  **Co-operation with other agencies Equality of all Member States** |

International police co-operation within Interpol has always been conducted in accordance with the guiding principles listed below:

* **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.** Co-operation is based on the actions taken by the police forces in the various member States, operating within their own national boundaries and in accordance with their own national laws.
* **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.** The Organization’s field of activities is limited to crime prevention and law enforcement in connection with ordinary criminal offences. This is the only basis on which there can be agreement between all member states.
* \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.Any member state may cooperate with any other and co-operation must not be impeded by geographical or linguistic factors.
* **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.**All the member states are provided with the same services and have the same rights, irrespective of the size of their financial contributions to the Organization.
* **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.** Co-operation is extended through the National Central Bureaus to any Government agency concerned with combating ordinary criminal offences
* **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.** Although governed by principles designed to ensure regularity and continuity, working methods are flexible enough to take account of the wide variety of structures and situations in different countries. Respect for these principles means that Interpol cannot have teams of detectives with supranational powers who travel around investigating cases in different countries. International Police cooperation has to depend on coordinated action on the part of the member States’ police forces, all of which may supply or request information or services on different occasions.

**11. Draw up a plan for rendering the text “International Cooperation in Criminal Matters”. Give examples of International Agreements and Treaties.**

**12. Comment the following quotation.**

“The world is a dangerous place, not because of the people who are evil, but because of the people who do not do anything about it”. Albert Einstein

**UNIT 2**

Lead-in

**1. Watch the Video “Interpol – 100 years of innovation 1914-2014” for the main ideas and think about the subject of the clip.**

1. What is the aim of Interpol?

2. When and where was it officially created?

3. What was the job of a special unit?

4. What measures were taken to facilitate cooperation among countries?

5. What is the aim of Red Notices?

6. Does Interpol cooperate with the UN?

7. What kind of crimes do law enforcement operations target?

**2. Watch the Clip again. The group is divided into 3 teams. Each team is to choose one question and find information on it. A secretary collects and summarizes the information.**

1. What terrorist attacks marked a new era?

2. In what way did the 1 24/7 secure communication system help Interpol?

3. What can people do if they join their efforts?

NOTES. Red Notice is used when seeking the arrest of a wanted person, and with a view of extradition. Depending upon the country involved, it may serve as a provisional arrest warrant.

Blue Notice is used to collect additional information about a person’s location, identity or legal activities in relation to a criminal matter. In terms of terrorism matter, this notice enhances the chances for better identification of a suspect.

Green notice is used to provide warning to criminal intelligence about persons who have committed criminal offences, and are likely to repeat these crimes in other countries. They are, in essence, a form of ‘alert’ signal for calling attention to criminals.

**Text 1**

**Interpol Creation**

**Vocabulary**

1. to oversee the implementation of decisions – осуществлять контроль за исполнением решений

2. to inhibit crime / to suppress crime – сдерживать преступность

3. to pose a threat to – представлять угрозу

4. to respond to inquiries – реагировать на запросы

5. nuclear and explosive materials – ядерные и взрывчатые вещества

## 1. Skim the text. Divide the text into logical parts and entitle each part. Use logical connectors to pass from one part to another, e.g. thus, that’s why, on the whole and etc.

At the beginning of 20th century it was necessary that the international organization should be created to combat crime and to exchange ideas and methods between the police forces in the world. It came into being under the name of the International Criminal Police Commission (ICPC) in 1923 and worked until the beginning of World War II. In 1946 the old members of ICPC met in Belgium to revive the organization and in 1956 it was renamed as the International Criminal Police Organization – Interpol. The official name is ICPU-Interpol. This international organization of police forces from 186 countries is designed to coordinate [International Law](http://legal-dictionary.thefreedictionary.com/international+law) enforcement, mutual aid and cooperation among the police forces of its national members in order to prevent and inhibit crime. Interpol’s day-to-day operation is managed by a General Secretariat under the direction of a secretary general, who is appointed for a five-year term by the General Assembly. The General Assembly, consisting of one delegate from each member country, is Interpol’s supreme decision-making body. An Executive Committee of 13 members, each representing a different region of the world, is appointed by the General Assembly at its annual meeting. The Executive Committee oversees the implementation of decisions made by the General Assembly and supervises the work of the secretary general. Interpol with the General Secretariat – the international headquarters – located in Lyons, France. Delegates from member countries meet once a year to discuss police problems and admit new members. Interpol concentrates on three broad categories of international criminal activity: [terrorism](http://www.britannica.com/topic/terrorism) and crimes against people and property, including crimes against children, trafficking in human beings, illegal immigration, automobile theft, and art theft; economic, financial and computer crimes, including banking fraud, money laundering, corruption and [counterfeiting](http://www.britannica.com/topic/counterfeiting); illegal drugs and criminal organizations, including [organized crime](http://www.britannica.com/topic/organized-crime). Terrorism that makes use of CBRNCE materials (chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear and explosives) poses a clear threat to health and safety, economic and political stability on global level. Interpol specialized on the prevention radiological and nuclear terrorism, bioterrorism, chemical and explosive terrorism. CBRNE terrorism is a global threat with transnational consequences. Interpol activities range from information sharing and intelligence analysis to operational and investigate support. Each member nation maintains and staffs its own national central bureau. Each national central bureau coordinates and responds to inquiries received from local and foreign law enforcement agencies. Each bureau also arranges for resolutions adopted by Interpol to be applied at the national level and works to ensure that the basic principles laid down by Interpol's constitution are followed. Under Article 2 of the UN Organization's Constitution Interpol's aims are: to ensure and promote the widest possible mutual assistance between all criminal police authorities, within the limits of the laws existing in the different countries and in the spirit of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights; to establish and develop all institutions to contribute effectively to the prevention and suppression of ordinary law crimes. Interpol is forbidden by its constitution to undertake any intervention or activities of a political, military, religious, or racial character.

**2. Answer the questions.**

1. What kind of organization is Interpol?

2, Why and when was it established?

3.What was the reason to create the international organization?

4. Where is the international headquarters located ?

5. What are the functions of a national bureau?

6. What is Interpol’s supreme decision-making body?

7. What is forbidden for Interpol by its constitution?

8. How regularly does the general Assembly meet?

9. What is the international organization of police forces designed to coordinate?

10. Is Interpol a nonpolitical body?

11. What international crimes does Interpol deal with?

12. Can Interpol interfere in domestic law of other countries?

**3. Look through the text again. Say in what context the dates and numbers given below are used.**

1946, 1956, 186, 20

## 4. Complete the chart.

Investigation of criminal activities conducted by Interpol

**5. Fill in the prepositions.**

|  |
| --- |
| into, with ,under (2), on, for, to , in (5), by, of (5), within, between |

1. It came\_\_1\_\_ being\_\_2\_ the name of the International Criminal Police Commission in 1923.

2. An intelligence agency is a [government agency](http://www.wikiwand.com/en/Government_agency) responsible \_\_3\_\_ the election, analysis, and exploitation of information and intelligence \_\_4\_\_ support \_5\_\_\_ [law enforcement](http://www.wikiwand.com/en/Law_enforcement), [national security](http://www.wikiwand.com/en/National_security), [military](http://www.wikiwand.com/en/Military), and [foreign policy](http://www.wikiwand.com/en/Foreign_policy) objectives.

3. Interpol’s day-to-day operation is managed \_6\_\_ a General Secretariat \_7\_\_ the direction of a secretary general, who is appointed for a five-year term by the General Assembly.

4. Intelligence agencies can stipulate provision \_\_8\_\_ analysis \_\_9\_\_ areas relevant \_\_10\_\_ [national security](http://www.wikiwand.com/en/National_security).

5. Interpol ensures and promotes the widest possible mutual assistance\_\_ 11\_\_ all criminal police authorities,\_\_12\_\_ the limits of the laws existing in different countries and \_\_13 \_\_ the spirit \_14\_\_\_ the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.

6. This interpretation, based \_\_15\_\_\_the predominant aspects\_\_16\_\_the offence, is embodied\_\_17\_\_\_ a resolution adopted by Interpol's General Assembly in 1951.

7. All the member states are provided \_\_18\_\_\_ the same services and have the same rights, irrespective \_\_19\_\_\_the size\_\_20\_\_\_their financial contributions\_\_21\_\_\_the Organization.

**Text 2**

**Interpol Partnership**

**1. Read the text and say what organizations does Interpol cooperate with?**

Transnational crime cannot be countered by the law enforcement community in isolation. By engaging in partnerships across sectors, Interpol can share expertise, technology and resources, and so strengthen our joint response.

Interpol acknowledges the need to work in partnership with other organizations in order to combat international crime. As such, it has concluded a number of cooperation agreements with other international organizations, including the United Nations and the European Union.

External organizations can bring a new and valuable dimension to Interpol’s activities, with their contributions benefiting Interpol’s entire network of 190 member countries. The exchange of data between Interpol's 190 member countries is carried out according to strict guidelines in order to ensure the legality and quality of information and the [protection of personal data](http://www.interpol.int/About-INTERPOL/Legal-materials/Data-protection).

Interpol cooperates closely with a number of partners in the [public sector](http://www.interpol.int/About-INTERPOL/International-partners/Public-partners), and maintains representative offices at the [United Nations](http://www.interpol.int/About-INTERPOL/International-partners/United-Nations) and the [European Union](http://www.interpol.int/About-INTERPOL/International-partners/European-Union). Other public-sector partners include the World Customs Organization, CEMAC (Economic Community of Central African States) and numerous government agencies. Interpol works with select partners from the [private sector](http://www.interpol.int/About-INTERPOL/International-partners/Private-partners), encompassing both for-profit entities and non-profit bodies, such as non-governmental organizations and foundations.

In order to effectively fulfill its cross-border activities Interpol functions [under international law](http://www.interpol.int/About-INTERPOL/Legal-materials/An-organization-under-international-law). Interpol is recognized as an international organization by the United Nations

The Interpol Constitution is an international agreement that confirms as members the governments of all those countries that participated in its adoption in 1956 and provides the application procedure for countries that were not members in 1956 to join Interpol. As Interpol's main legal document, [the Constitution](http://www.interpol.int/About-INTERPOL/Legal-materials/The-Constitution) outlines Interpol's aims and objectives. It establishes the mandate of the Organization to ensure the widest possible cooperation between all criminal police authorities and to suppress ordinary law crimes. The Constitution specifies that international police cooperation is to be conducted within the spirit of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. For example, this commitment to [human rights](http://www.interpol.int/About-INTERPOL/Legal-materials/Human-rights) is expressed through the Organization's cooperation with international courts and tribunals and through the careful processing of personal data. It is strictly forbidden for Interpol to undertake any activities of a political, military, religious or racial character.

**2. Work in small groups. Ask each other questions about the text. Use word-combinations given below.**

To strengthen response, to combat international crime, to exchange data, to ensure the legality, numerous government agencies, cross-border activities, to outline aims and objectives, strictly forbidden.

**3. Render into English.**

Деятельность Интерпола связана с проблемами социальной безопасности, международного терроризма и организованной преступности, незаконного производства и оборота наркотиков, контрабанды оружия и торговли людьми, отмывания денег и детской порнографии, финансовых преступлений.

Специалисты Интерпола регистрируют сведения о международных преступлениях. Также ведутся картотеки, содержащие сведения об отпечатках пальцев,  о похищенных автомобилях, произведениях искусства, лицах, пропавших без вести,  неопознанных телах, огнестрельном оружии.

Интерпол ведет розыск лиц, подозреваемых в совершении международных преступлений, включая оперативно-розыскные действия.

**4. Watch the clip “Interpol-connecting police for a safer world” Youtube. Using the texts and Internet resources describe the Interpol structure. Fill in the chart.**

INTERPOL

**5. Translate the word combinations into Russian. Use them in your own sentences.**

a declaration

measures

decisions

To adopt the agenda

standards

a resolution

an evaluation

screening

To undertake monitoring

emergency measures

an open dialogue

**6. Read the text and use Internet for additional information about the Interpol activities. Make a presentation devoted to**

1. Interpol

2. Europol

3. Interpol Moscow

Interpol and Europol are intelligence agencies characterized with different functions. Interpol stands for International Criminal Police Organization. On the other hand Europol is an intelligence agency of the European Union.

The chief function of Interpol is to facilitate the cooperation among other international police organizations. On the other hand the chief function of Europol is to facilitate the cooperation of the various intelligence organizations of the member countries.

**Interpol** has the power to conduct investigation into the crimes committed in different arenas. The arenas into which criminal investigations can be conducted by Interpol include genocide, terrorism, crimes against humanity, money laundering, war crimes and several other kinds of crimes.

The Interpol officials have the right and the power to conduct investigations and also make arrests of the suspects in connection with the crimes committed in the areas of money laundering, terrorism, genocide and the like. On the other hand the officials of Europol are not authorized to conduct investigations and question the suspects in connection with the various crimes.

In other words it can be said that Europol is not entitled to make arrests of the suspects in relation to the various crimes across the continent of Europe. All they can do is extend their support to the other intelligence agencies in the member countries where crimes of different kinds are committed.

Interpol is a very large organization when compared to the intelligence agency of Europol. As many as 178 independent nations and 14 sub-bureaus or dependencies are members of the Interpol. It promotes mutual assistance among all police authorities within the limits of the law existing in the different countries.

**Russia.** National Central Bureau (NCB) for Russia serves as the central platform for operational information exchange between Russian law-enforcement entities and the Interpol law enforcement community.   There are 80 regional divisions of Interpol Moscow which operate throughout the Russian Federation. First created in 1997, their main tasks and functions are similar to those of Interpol Moscow but have a more regional focus, serving primarily as a liaison link for regional investigations, crime fighting and the search for fugitives. The NCB works to combat a number of priority crimes with an international dimension including: The search for location and identification of fugitives and missing people; оrganized crime and terrorism; economic crime and counterfeit currency; trafficking in stolen vehicles; theft of cultural heritage and works of art; drug trafficking; illegal trade and smuggling of firearms; ammunition and explosives; high-tech crime; crimes connected with document forgery.

**UNIT 3**

**Text 1**

**Extradition**

**Vocabulary**

1. intrusion in the liberty of the person – посягательство на свободу личности

2. to deny extradition – отказать в выдаче преступника

3. to grant extradition in accordance with domestic law and applicable treaties – выдача в соответствии с внутренним законодательством и применимыми договорами

4. the surrender of a suspected or convicted [criminal](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Crime) – выдача подозреваемого или осужденного

5. the list treaty and dual criminality treaties – договор-перечень и договор о двойной преступности

6. to impose certain restrictions on extradition –наложить определенные ограничения на выдачу преступника

**1. Read the text (A). Make up a list of the main ideas.**

**(A)** Extradition is the surrender of a person by one State to another, the person being either accused of a (extraditable) crime in the requesting State or unlawfully at large after conviction. This is a considerable intrusion in the liberty of the person concerned, but one which is justified by the common interest of States in combating crimes and expunging safe havens for fugitives. The standard term is extradition, terms such as surrender or transfer are sometimes used but often with a view to signal a substantive difference.

Extradition is normally subject to strict requirements. The already mentioned principles of double criminality and the rule of specialty apply and the offences must also be extraditable. The requested State may deny extradition, which sometimes also covers a pardon or an amnesty in that State or a third State. Additionally, numerous grounds for refusal apply and conditions may be imposed. States may grant extradition in accordance with domestic law and applicable treaties, as is the case in the 1948 Genocide Convention and in the 1949 Geneva Convention.

The provisions of the 1984 Torture Convention are different. However, a condition such as non-extradition of nationals may not be invoked to refuse extradition concerning torture. But in practice many States do refuse extradition of nationals even in torture cases.

With all these hurdles requests for extradition are not always successful and one may ask what effect the obligation has on the requested State when refusing to extradite. To be meaningful the principle must mean that the requested State shall take domestic action if extradition is denied. Many States insist on reciprocity and require an international agreement for extradition. The basic multilateral treaty in Europe is the 1957 European Extradition Convention and its Additional Protocols, adopted by the Council of Europe, which represent a traditional scheme.

The EU has adopted two conventions in 1995 and 1996, which provide for simplified proceedings and reduced grounds for refusal but they are not widely ratified. Among the EU Member States, however, the European Arrest Warrant has replaced the traditional extradition scheme and introduced a system whereby a warrant in one State shall be recognized and enforced in all other member States.The European Arrest Warrant is to be recognized and enforced in the other Member States with minimal formalities.

**2. Read the text (B) for additional information.**

**(B)** Extradition is the official process by which one [nation](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Nation) or state requests and obtains from another nation or state the surrender of a suspected or convicted [criminal](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Crime). As between nations, extradition is regulated by [treaties](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Treaty).

The consensus in international law is that a [state](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Nation-state) does not have any obligation to surrender an alleged criminal to a foreign state, as one principle of sovereignty is that every state has legal authority over the people within its borders. Such absence of international obligation and desire of the right to demand such criminals of other countries has caused a web of extradition [treaties](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Treaty) or agreements to evolve; most countries in the world have signed bilateral extradition treaties with most other countries. No country in the world has an extradition treaty with all other countries; for example, the [United States](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/United_States) lacks extradition treaties with over 50 nations, including the People's Republic of China, [Namibia](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Namibia), [Jamaica](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Jamaica), and [North Korea](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/North_Korea).

There are two types of extradition treaties: list and dual criminality treaties. The most common and traditional is the list treaty, which contains a list of crimes for which a suspect will be extradited. Dual criminality treaties, used since the 1980s, generally allow for extradition of a criminal suspect if the punishment is more than one year imprisonment in both countries. Occasionally the amount of the time of the sentence agreed upon between the two countries is varied. Under both types of treaties, if the conduct is not a crime in either country then it will not be an extraditable offense. Generally, an extradition treaty requires that a country seeking extradition be able to show that:

* The relevant crime is sufficiently serious.
* There exists a *prima facie* case against the individual sought.
* The event in question qualifies as a crime in both countries.
* The extradited person can reasonably expect a fair trial in the recipient country.
* The likely penalty will be proportionate to the crime.

Most countries require themselves to deny extradition requests if, in the government's opinion, the suspect is sought for a political crime. Many countries, such as [Mexico](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Mexico), [Canada](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Canada), and most European nations, will not allow extradition if the [death penalty](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Death_penalty) may be imposed on the suspect unless they are assured that the death sentence will not subsequently be passed or carried out.

Countries with a rule of law typically make extradition subject to review by that country's courts. These courts may impose certain restrictions on extradition, or prevent it altogether, if for instance they deem the accusations to be based on dubious evidence, or evidence obtained from [torture](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Torture), or if they believe that the defendant will not be granted a fair trial on arrival, or will be subject to cruel, inhumane, or degrading treatment if extradited.

**3. Give English equivalents.**

1. выдача преступника
2. тюремное заключение
3. отказать в требовании экстрадиции преступника
4. смертный казнь
5. свидетельские показания, полученные в результате бесчеловечного обращения

**4. Answer the questions.**

1. What procedure do we call extradition?

2. For which crimes a suspect can be extradited?

3. Can a country deny extradition request?

**5. Decide whether these statements are true or false.**

1. Extradition is regulated by treaties.
2. All countries have extradition treaties with other countries.
3. The dual treaty is the most common**.**
4. Countries with a rule of law typically make extradition subject to review by that country's courts.
5. If the accusation is based on evidence obtained from torture the country’s court may impose restrictions.

**6. Look through the text again. Say in what context the dates given below are used.**

1948, 1984, 1957, 1996

**7. Match the words with their definitions.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. sovereignty | a. a statement by a judge; punishment |
| 2.prima facie | b. asking for something in a polite or formal way |
| 3. request | c. extreme physical pain that someone is forced to suffer |
| 4. restriction | d. the right of a country to rule itself |
| 5. [torture](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Torture) | e. something that limits what you can do |
| 6. sentence | f. evidence appears to exist to support the case |

**8. Consult the dictionaries and give the definitions to the words.**

1. Extradition is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. Surrender is. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. Transfer is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**9. Give the word combinations with the verb *to extend.***

To extend

**10. Expand your knowledge on extradition. Choose the problem to report to the class. You may use the Internet resources.**

1. Extradition treaties and agreements.

2. Cases of extradition.

3. The role of the UN in extradition of suspects.

4. Whether or not the UN requests for extradition are obligatory.

5. Rights of victims of politically motivated extradition requests.

6. Extradition – procedure and notice.

**Text 2**

**Universal Jurisdiction**

**Vocabulary**

1. to claim criminal jurisdiction over an accused person – требовать уголовного правосудия в отношении обвиняемого

2. to tolerate jurisdictional arbitrage –допускать юрисдикцию арбитражного суда

3. to pose a serious threat to the international community – представлять серьезную угрозу международному сообществу

4. to assert universal jurisdiction – осуществлять универсальную юрисдикцию

**1. Skim the text below and find out if the text contains**

a. crimes that fall under universal jurisdiction.

b. categories of people who fall under universal jurisdiction

c. crimes against humanity prosecuted by Amnesty International.

d. geographically specific courts.

Universal jurisdiction allows states or international organizations to claim criminal jurisdiction over an accused person regardless of where the alleged crime was committed, and regardless of the accused nationality, country of residence or any other relation with the prosecuting entity. Crimes prosecuted under universal jurisdiction are considered crimes against all, too serious to tolerate jurisdictional arbitrage.

The concept of universal jurisdiction is therefore closely linked to the idea that some international norms are *erga omnes*, or owed to the entire world community, as well as the concept of *jus cogens* – that certain international law obligations are binding on all states.

According to Amnesty International, a proponent of universal jurisdiction, certain crimes pose so serious a threat to the international community as a whole, that states have a logical and moral duty to prosecute an individual responsible. Therefore, no place should be a safe haven for those who have committed genocide, crimes against humanity, extrajudicial execution, war crimes and torture.

Amnesty International argues that since the end of the Second World War over fifteen states have conducted investigations, commenced prosecutions and completed trials based on universal jurisdiction for the crimes or arrested people with a view to extraditing the person to a state seeking to prosecute them. These states include: Australia, Austria, Belgium, Canada, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Israel, Mexico, Senegal, Spain, Switzerland, the United Kingdom and the United States.

The International Criminal Court is an international tribunal of general jurisdiction to prosecute state-members’ citizens for genocide, crimes against humanity and war crimes as specified by the Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court signed in 1998. It provides for ICC jurisdiction over state party or on the territory of a non-state party where that non-state party has entered into an agreement with the court providing for it to have such jurisdiction in a particular case.

In addition, the United Nations has set up geographically specific courts to investigate and prosecute crimes against humanity under a theory of universal jurisdiction, such as the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda (1994) and the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia (1993).

Universal jurisdiction may be asserted by a particular nation as well as by an international tribunal. The result is the same: individuals become answerable for crimes defined and prosecuted regardless of where they live or where the conduct occurred, crimes said to be so grievous as to be universally condemned.

All states parties to the Convention against torture are obliged whenever a person suspected of torture is found in their territory to submit the case to their prosecuting authorities for the purposes of prosecution, or to extradite that person. In addition, it is now widely recognized that states, even those that are not states parties to this treaty, may exercise universal jurisdiction over torture under customary international law.

**2. Give Russian equivalents.**

1. prosecuting entity

2. to tolerate jurisdictional arbitrage

3. to conduct investigation

4. to become answerable for the crime

5. to enter into agreement

6. to be universally condemned

**3. Give English equivalents.**

1. международно-правовые обязательства

2. требовать уголовную юрисдикцию

3. представлять серьезную угрозу

4.быть обязательным для всех государств

5. быть тесно связанным с чем-то

**4. Decide whether these statements are true or false.**

1. People who have committed serious crimes can find refuge in their own country .

2. Certain crimes pose a serious threat to the international community as a whole.

3. Jus cogens means ‘owed to the entire community’.

4. Amnesty International came into existence after the First World War

5. The ICC is situated in Rome.

**5. Work in pairs. Find what information is not mentioned in the text.**

1. Universal jurisdiction permits to claim a person regardless of his nationality.
2. According to Amnesty International states have no right to prosecute a person for serious crimes.
3. Under the Universal jurisdiction criminals will not be extradited to the country where the death sentence is in force.
4. Under the Rome Statute of the ICC only member states can be prosecuted for crimes against humanity.
5. Universal jurisdiction may not be asserted by a particular nation.
6. If a person is accused of torture he must be arrested and prosecuted.
7. A state should have the obligation to prosecute or extradite those in its jurisdiction who have participated in an armed conflict in a territory of which they are neither nationals nor long-term residents.

**6. Render into English.**

Наиболее распространенной формой юрисдикции является территориальная юрисдикция, согласно которой государственные суды осуществляют правосудие в отношении обвиняемых в совершении преступлений на территории данного государства.

Однако международное законодательство уже давно признало право судов осуществлять другие виды правосудия в отношении определенных правонарушений, таких как пиратство и военные преступления.

Современное международное право допускает юрисдикцию над лицами, подозреваемыми в совершении некоторых видов тяжких преступлений в рамках международного права. Юрисдикция осуществляется, если преступник или жертва являются гражданами другого государства или если преступление не угрожает безопасности данного государства. Такая юрисдикция называется универсальной.

**7. Make up a dialogue between two lawyers on the principles of universal jurisdiction under International Criminal Law.**

Use the following clichés

|  |
| --- |
| First of all I’d like to ask you about…  I very interested in …  May I ask you…..  How can you explain to me this….  My second/ next question is that…  I really think…  Furthermore….  What do go mean by saying that….  I mean to say that….  The point is that…..  Unfortunately…  Excuse me. Do you mean…  What are the consequences of…  Yes. But that’s only one side of the problem….  That is all there is to it. |

**8. Write an essay on one of the following topics (not less than 1 page).**

1. The necessity of the international criminal police.

2. Legal regulations of Interpol.

3. Problems of extradition.

4. Extradition in the RF.

5. Universal jurisdiction.

6. Criticism of Interpol.

7. Cooperation of Interpol with law enforcement agencies of other countries. Treaties.

**9. Opinion Poll.**

1. What type of transnational crimes do you find the most horrible?

2. Why do you think it is necessary for countries:

* to extradite criminals and put them on trial,
* promptly exchange information on criminal activities,
* provide technical assistance to one another for crime prevention purposes.
* prevent cross-border activities by smugglers of firearms, explosives and substances that can be used in making nuclear, biological and chemical weapons.

3. Which of these measures do you think are the most efficient?

4. What can politicians, journalists and law-enforcement organs do to combat transnational crimes?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| You can’t do without these phrases. Logical connectors | |
| 1. Cause  Thus  That’s why  As a result  Consequently  Therefore | 2. Contradiction  Indeed  In fact  3. Contrast  However  Still |

**10. Supplementary presentations.**

1. Interpol in the fight against crimes in the sphere of high technology.

2. Interpol in the fight against organized and economic crimes.

3. Interpol in Russia – international legal requirements.

**GLOSSARY**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| to ensure mutual assistance | обеспечить взаимопомощь |
| to extend cooperation | расширять сотрудничество |
| guiding principles | руководящие принципы |
| to interfere in [internal](file:///\\clck.yandex.ru\redir\dv\*data=url%3Dhttp%253A%252F%252Fwooordhunt.ru%252Fword%252Finternal%26ts%3D1487078037%26uid%3D9098862441478339164&sign=94d22a3143d5ff62b7ec8b315b977468&keyno=1) [affairs](file:///\\clck.yandex.ru\redir\dv\*data=url%3Dhttp%253A%252F%252Fwooordhunt.ru%252Fword%252Faffairs%26ts%3D1487078037%26uid%3D9098862441478339164&sign=329bb653b2a06738eb05ba98ec6eeb43&keyno=1) of a country | вмешиваться во внутренние дела государства |
| to interfere [with](file:///\\clck.yandex.ru\redir\dv\*data=url%3Dhttp%253A%252F%252Fwooordhunt.ru%252Fword%252Fwith%26ts%3D1487078037%26uid%3D9098862441478339164&sign=3150962f1fec66b96ca472c5d121f19e&keyno=1) [diplomatic](file:///\\clck.yandex.ru\redir\dv\*data=url%3Dhttp%253A%252F%252Fwooordhunt.ru%252Fword%252Fdiplomatic%26ts%3D1487078037%26uid%3D9098862441478339164&sign=4fe9e5dac5c581ad2c38cf14135a9c75&keyno=1) [initiatives](file:///\\clck.yandex.ru\redir\dv\*data=url%3Dhttp%253A%252F%252Fwooordhunt.ru%252Fword%252Finitiatives%26ts%3D1487078037%26uid%3D9098862441478339164&sign=51f4f3ec6f195d67878e5d5cc1e0530b&keyno=1) | идти вразрез с дипломатическими инициативами |
| mutual aid and cooperation | взаимопомощь и сотрудничество |
| nuclear safety and security | ядерная безопасность |
| to operate within national boundaries | действовать в пределах границ государства |
| to oversee the implementation of decisions | контролировать выполнение решений |
| predominant aspects of the offence | основные аспекты состава преступления |
| to prevent and inhibit crime | предотвратить преступление |
| to promote gender equality | обеспечить равенство мужчин и женщин |
| to provide a notification of a serious illness | предоставить уведомление (справку) о серьезном заболевании |
| to pursue objectives | преследовать цели |
| to request an arrest of a fugitive | потребовать арест беглого преступника |
| self-reliance and stability | уверенность и стабильность |
| sophisticated facilities | специальное оборудование; быть оснащенным специальной техникой |
| to travel abroad surreptitiously | тайно пересекать границы |
| to undertake an intervention | осуществить интервенцию |

**MODULE VIII**

**Chapter 15**

**THE UNITED NATIONS ORGANIZATION**

**HUMAN RIGHTS DECLARATION**

**UNIT 1**

**HISTORY OF THE UN**

Lead-in

1. **Using the following phrases answer the questions.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| In my view (in my opinion)  Personally, I think  As far as I’m concerned  According to smb.  I agree (with you)  I doubt  I have my doubts about  Yes, you could be right but I’m not sure (that)  I partly agree  I agree to some extent but  I’m afraid I totally disagree | По-моему  Я считаю  Что касается меня …  Как считает …  Я с Вами согласен  Я сомневаюсь  Я не уверен (в ч-либо)  Возможно, Вы правы, но Я не уверен (что) …  Я согласен (в какой-то мере) …  В некотором плане я согласен, но ...  Боюсь, что я совсем не согласен ... |

1. What do you know about the United Nations?
2. Do you think the UN is a governmental organization?
3. What city is associated with the United Nations?
4. Do you believe the UN should protect human rights?
5. Does the UN fight against terrorism?

**Text 1**

**History of the UN**

1. to facilitate cooperation – содействовать сотрудничеству

syn. to promote

1. to maintain peace – сохранить мир

syn. to preserve

1. to provide a platform for dialogue – создать платформу для диалога
2. human rights – права человека
3. to promote respect for human rights – содействовать уважению прав человека
4. international security – международная безопасность
5. to achieve world peace – добиться глобального мира
6. UN member-states – страны-члены ООН
7. UN headquarters – штаб-квартира ООН
8. The UN Charter – Устав ООН
9. The UN General Assembly – Генеральная Ассамблея ООН
10. The UN Secretary General – Генеральный Секретарь ООН
11. The UN Security Council – Совет Безопасности ООН
12. Economic and Social Council – Экономический и Социальный Совет
13. International Court of Justice – Международный Суд
14. public figure – общественный деятель
15. to attain a post – занять пост
16. successor – преемник
17. aim – цель, syn. purpose, target, objective, goal
18. to fight against – бороться с …
19. to settle disputes by peaceful means (peacefully) – решать спорные вопросы мирным путем
20. to settle disputes through negotiations – решать спорные вопросы путем переговоров
21. non-interference in the internal affairs – невмешательство во внутренние дела
22. the use of force – использование силы (применение силы)
23. to espouse the idea – вдохновиться идеей

**2. Read and translate the text.**

The United Nations (UN) is an international organization whose stated aims are to facilitate cooperation in international law, international security, economic development, social progress, human rights, and achieving world peace. The UN was founded in 1945 after World War II to replace the League of Nations, to stop wars between countries, and to provide a platform for dialogue.

There are currently nearly 200 member states, including nearly every recognized independent state in the world. From its headquarters on international territory in New York City, the UN and its specialized agencies decide on substantive and administrative issues in regular meetings held throughout the year. The organization is divided into administrative bodies, primarily:

- The General Assembly (the main deliberative assembly);

- The Security Council (decides certain resolutions for peace and security);

- The Economic and Social Council (assists in promoting international economic and social cooperation and development);

- The Secretariat (provides studies, information, and facilities needed by the UN);

- The International Court of Justice (the primary judicial organ).

Additional bodies deal with the governance of all other UN System agencies, such as the World Health Organization (WHO) and United Nations Children`s Fund (UNICEF). The UN’s most visible public figure is the Secretary-General. The organization is financed from assessed and voluntary contributions from its member states, and has six official languages: Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish.

The UN was founded as a successor to the League of Nations, which was widely considered to have been ineffective in its role as an international governing body, as it had been unable to prevent World War II. The term “United Nations” was first used by Winston Churchill and Franklin D. Roosevelt, in the 1942 Declaration by United Nations, which united the Allied countries of WWII under the Atlantic Charter, and soon became a term widely used to refer to them. Declarations signed at wartime Allied conferences in 1943 espoused the idea of the UN. Those and later talks outlined the organization`s proposed purposes, membership, organs, and ideals in regard to peace, security, and cooperation.

On 25 April 1945, the UN Conference on International Organization began in San-Francisco, attended by 50 governments and a number of non-governmental organizations involved in drafting the Charter of the UN. The UN officially came into existence on 24 October 1945 upon ratification of the Charter by the five permanent members of the Security Council – France, the Republic of China, the Soviet Union, the United Kingdom and the United States – and by a majority of the other 46 signatories. The first meetings of the General Assembly, with 51 nations represented, and the Security Council, took place in Westminster Central Hall in London in January 1946. According to the Charter, the UN is to maintain international peace and security, to develop friendly relations among nations, to cooperate in solving international problems and in promoting respect for human rights.

**3. Translate words and word combinations from the text into Russian.**

To facilitate cooperation, member states, to achieve world peace, to provide a platform for a dialogue, the UN headquarters, successor, to prevent World War II, international security, to hold meetings, substantive issues, ineffective, to draft the Charter of the UN, to come into existence.

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian words and word combinations.**

Международная безопасность, содействовать сотрудничеству, уважать права человека, обеспечить платформу для диалога, важные вопросы, сохранять мир во всем мире, согласно Уставу, Генеральный Секретарь ООН, вступить в должность, предотвратить войну, преемник Лиги Наций, прекратить войны, штаб-квартира, Генеральная Ассамблея ООН, Совет Безопасности.

**5. Match Russian collocations from the left column with their English equivalents from the right column.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Генеральный секретарь ООН 2. Генеральная Ассамблея ООН 3. Совет Безопасности 4. Штаб-квартира ООН 5. Международный суд по правам человека 6. Совет по экономическим и социальным вопросам 7. Государства-члены ООН 8. Устав ООН | 1. The Security Council 2. UN Charter 3. UN General Assembly 4. The UN Secretary-General 5. UN member states 6. The UN Headquarters 7. The Economic and Social Council 8. The International Court of Justice |

**6. Complete the sentences according to the text.**

1. The United Nations is an international organization whose stated aims are … .

2. The UN was founded in … .to … .

3. The UN’s most visible public figure is …. .

4. The UN was founded as a successor to … .

5. The organization is divided into administrative bodies, primarily … .

6. The UN officially came into existence … .

7. According to the Charter, the UN is … .

**7. Answer the following questions.**

1. When was the UN founded and for what purpose?

2. When was the term “United Nations” first used and by whom?

3. What countries ratified the UN Charter?

4. What did the UN Charter set out?

5. What are the main organs of the UN?

6. When did the UN officially come into existence?

7. When and where did the first meetings of the General Assembly and the Security Council take place?

**8. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. When states become members of the UN, they agree to accept the obligations of the UN Charter, an international treaty, which sets out basic principles of international relations.

2. According to the Charter, the UN has four purposes: to maintain international peace and security, to develop friendly relations among nations, to cooperate in solving international problems and promoting respect for human rights, and to be a centre for harmonizing the actions of nations.

3. The UN is not a world government, and it does not make laws. It does, however, provide the means to help resolve international conflicts and formulate policies on matters affecting all of us.

4. The United Nations is much more than a peacekeeper and forum for conflict resolution. Often without attracting attention, the UN is engaged in a vast array of work that touches on every aspect of people’s lives around the world.

5. The UN recognizes the sovereign equality of all its members who will refrain from use or threat of force in inter-state relations. It does not interfere in matters that are within the domestic jurisdiction of any state.

**9. Using words and collocations from the text translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Целью ООН является поддержание международного мира между народами и безопасности, разрешение всех спорных вопросов путем переговоров.

2. Основными органами ООН являются: Генеральная Ассамблея, Совет Безопасности, Экономический и Социальный Совет, Международный Суд, Секретариат, каждый из которых включает в себя большое количество комитетов и подкомитетов

3. Устав ООН был подписан 50 странами в 1945 году в Сан-Франциско, Калифорния.

4. ООН всегда руководствовалась принципом невмешательства во внутренние дела независимых государств и пыталась удержать конфликтующие стороны при разрешении спорных вопросов.

5. ООН выступает за осуществление международного сотрудничества в экономической, социальной, культурной и гуманитарной областях.

**UNIT 2**

**THE UN GENERAL ASSEMBLY**

**THE UN SECURITY COUNCIL**

**Text 1**

**The UN General Assembly**

1. to be composed of – состоять из

syn. to consist of, to comprise smth., smb.

1. member nations – страны-члены ООН
2. to be entitled to one vote – иметь право на один голос
3. at the request of the Security Council – по просьбе Совета Безопасности
4. at the request of a majority of the UN members – по просьбе большинства стран-членов ООН
5. any matter within the scope of the charter – любой вопрос, не противоречащий уставу ООН
6. to be brought before the General Assembly – быть представленным на рассмотрение сессии Генеральной Ассамблеи ООН
7. on the agenda – на повестке дня
8. to put on the agenda – включить в повестку дня
9. lack of unanimity – отсутствие единодушия (единства)
10. permanent members – постоянные члены
11. to fail to exercise its primary responsibility – оказаться не в состоянии выполнять свою первостепенную (главную) задачу
12. to be a threat to peace – быть угрозой миру
13. a breach of peace – нарушение мира
14. to recommend collective measures – рекомендовать коллективные меры
15. to restore peace – восстановить мир
16. to be convened within 24 hours – быть созванным, в течение 24 часов
17. an emergency special session – чрезвычайная, внеочередная сессия
18. two-thirds majority – большинство в 2/3.
19. subjects of particular concern – вопросы, вызывающие особую озабоченность
20. to refrain from using force – воздержаться от применения силы
21. most pressing problems – насущные проблемы.

**1. Read and translate the text into Russian.**

The General Assembly is composed of representatives of all member nations. Each nation may send not more than five representatives to each session. Each nation is entitled to one vote.

The General Assembly meets in regular annual sessions and in special sessions when necessary. Special sessions are convoked by the Secretary General at the request of the Security Council or of a majority of the members of the UN.

Important matters, such as international peace and security, admitting new members, the UN budget are decided by two-thirds majority. In recent years, a special effort has been made to reach decisions through consensus, rather than by formal vote.

Any matter within the scope of the charter may be brought before the General Assembly, which may make recommendations on all except issues on the agenda of the Security Council. However, the General Assembly in November, 1950, decided that if the Security Council, because of lack of unanimity among its permanent members, fails to exercise its primary responsibility for maintenance of international peace and security, in any case where there appears to be a threat to peace, breach of peace or act of aggression, the Assembly may consider it and recommend collective measures including the use of armed forces to maintain or restore peace. In such cases, the General Assembly may be convened within 24 hours in an emergency special session.

**2. Translate words and word combinations from the text into Russian.**

Member nations, to be entitled to, to meet in regular annual sessions, to be convoked, at the request of, a majority of members, within the scope of the Charter, to be brought before the General Assembly, except issues on the agenda of the Security Council, lack of unanimity, to fail to exercise its primary responsibility, maintenance of international peace and security, a breach of peace.

**3. Find in the text English equivalents to the Russian words and word combinations.**

Состоять из представителей, каждая страна, на повестке дня, постоянные члены Совета Безопасности ООН, в любом случае, угроза миру, рекомендовать коллективные меры, использование вооруженных сил, сохранить или восстановить мир, в подобных случаях, чрезвычайная сессия ООН, поддержание международного мира и безопасности.

**4. According to the text agree or disagree with the following statements. Give true statements.**

1. The UN was established in 1946 by 50 countries.

2. There are currently 150 member states to the UN.

3. According to the Charter the UN has one purpose.

4. The UN is a sort of world government, which makes laws.

5. The UN has four main organs.

6. The General Assembly is a kind of Parliament of nations.

7. Decisions on important matters in the UN General Assembly are taken by one-half majority.

8. There are 5 official languages of the United Nations.

**5**. **Answer the following questions.**

1. What is the composition of the General Assembly?

2. How many votes is each nation entitled to?

3. Who are special sessions convoked by?

4. At whose request are special sessions convened?

5. What matters may be brought before the General Assembly?

6. What was the decision of the General Assembly in November of 1950?

7. In what cases may the General Assembly be convened within 24 hours in an emergency special session?

**6. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. The main organ of the United Nations and the one in which all member states are represented is the General Assembly.

2. The General Assembly meets in regular annual sessions from September to December.

3. Special (emergency) sessions can be convened at the request of the Security Council or a majority of members of the United Nations on subjects of particular concern.

4. The Assembly has the right to discuss and make recommendations on all the matters within the scope of the UN Charter.

5. The UN General Assembly can make recommendations to member states and to other UN organs with the aim of promoting international cooperation in the political, economic and social fields.

6. In case the Security Council fails to exercise its primary responsibility for maintenance of peace and security the General Assembly may recommend collective measures.

7. The General Assembly may recommend the use of armed forces in the case of a breach of peace or act of aggression.

8. All UN member states are represented in the General Assembly – a kind of parliament of nations which meets to consider the world’s most pressing problems.

**7. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Каждая страна может послать на заседание сессии Генеральной Ассамблеи не более пяти представителей.

2. Чрезвычайные сессии ООН могут быть созваны Генеральным секретарем ООН по просьбе Совета Безопасности или по решению большинства членов Генеральной Ассамблеи.

3. Любой вопрос может быть вынесен (включен) на повестку дня сессии Генеральной Ассамблеи ООН.

4. В том случае, если Совет Безопасности ООН не может выполнить свою прямую обязанность по поддержанию мира и безопасности в том или ином регионе, Генеральная Ассамблея ООН может рассмотреть этот вопрос на внеочередной сессии и рекомендовать коллективные меры.

5. Внеочередные или чрезвычайные сессии ООН могут быть созваны в течение 24 часов от начала конфликта.

**Text 2**

**The Security Council**

1. permanent members of the Security Council – постоянные члены Совета Безопасности
2. to be eligible for re-election – иметь право на переизбрание
3. 2-year term – 2-х летний срок
4. to carry out decisions – выполнять решения
5. to investigate – расследовать
6. dispute – спор
7. disputable question – спорный вопрос
8. a party to a dispute – сторона-участник конфликта
9. to settle a dispute – урегулировать спор
10. to handle a dispute – заниматься разбором спора (спорного вопроса)

syn. to deal with, to address.

1. to threaten peace and security – угрожать миру и безопасности
2. to enforce decisions – проводить в жизнь решения
3. interruption of economic relations - прекращение (разрыв) экономических отношений
4. to call on smb. to do smth. – призывать к-л. к ч-либо
5. to sever diplomatic relationsv – разорвать дипломатические отношения
6. severance of diplomatic relations – разрыв дипломатических отношений
7. to furnish armed forces – сформировать вооруженные силы
8. to encourage – поддерживать, содействовать
9. protection of refugees – защита беженцев.

**8. Read and translate the text.**

The Security Council consists of 15 members, 5 with permanent seats. The remaining 10 are elected for 2-year terms by the General Assembly, they are not eligible for immediate re-election.

Permanent members of the Council are: China, France, Russia, the United Kingdom and the United States.

10 non-permanent members are currently Austria, Burkina Faso, Costa Rica, Croatia, Japan, Libya, Mexico, Turkey, Uganda and Vietnam.

The Security Council has the primary responsibility for maintaining international peace and security and members agree to carry out its decisions. The Council may investigate any dispute that threatens international peace and security. When the Security Council is handling a dispute or situation the General Assembly makes no recommendation unless the Council requests it.

The Security Council functions continuously, each member being represented at all times. It may change its place of meeting.

Any member of the UN may participate in its discussions and a nation not a member of the UN may appear if it is a party to a dispute.

The Security Council may decide to enforce its decisions without the use of arms. Such measures include interruption of economic relations, break in transportation and communications, and severance of diplomatic relations. If such measures fail the Council may call on UN members to furnish armed forces and assistance. The right of individual or collective self-defense is not prohibited by membership in the UN, and if a member nation is attacked it may do what is necessary, reporting this to the Security Council, which may take independent action. However, the Council encourages regional arrangements or agencies by means of which local disputes can be settled without getting as far as the Council, after the Council has approved this method.

**The Economic and Social Council**

Economic and Social Council consists of twenty-seven members. The Council is concerned with financial and technical assistance to the less developed countries, the international protection of refugees and aid to the world's children.

**The International Court of Justice**

The principal judicial organ of the United Nations is the International Court of Justice which sits at the Hague in the Netherlands. It is composed of fifteen judges who are elected by the Security Council and the General Assembly.

**The Secretariat**

The administrative functions of the United Nations are carried out by the Secretariat. The secretariat consists of some 6,000 members, 3,600 of whom are at the United Nations Headquarters in New York.

The Secretary General who is appointed by the General Assembly on the recommendation of the Security Council is at the head of the Secretariat.

**9. Translate the following words and word combinations into Russian.**

To be eligible for re-election, primary responsibility, to investigate a dispute, a party to a dispute, to enforce a decision, to call on UN members, to furnish armed forces, to encourage arrangements, self-defence, regional arrangements, severance of diplomatic relations, to threaten international peace and security.

**10. Find in the text English equivalents to the Russian words and word combinations.**

Cостоять из, быть выбранным на 2-х летний срок, важнейшая обязанность, угрожать миру и безопасности, разрыв дипломатических отношений, индивидуальная и коллективная самозащита, подвергнуться нападению, предпринять действия, основной судебный орган, поддерживать международные меры, защита беженцев, помощь детям во всем мире, быть назначенным, по рекомендации.

**11. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give true statements.**

1. There are 10 Security Council members.

2. The Security Council may convene from September to December.

3. The Security Council has the power to make binding decisions that member governments have agreed to carry out.

4. The Secretary General is appointed by the Secretariat.

5. The International Court of Justice sits in New York.

6. A nation not a UN member may not appear at the Security Council discutions if it is a party to a dispute.

7. When the Security Council is handling a dispute or situation the General Assembly makes recommendations.

**12. Answer the following questions.**

1. What countries are permanent members of the Security Council?

2. What is the primary responsibility of the Security Council?

3. How does the Security Council function?

4. In what way can the Security Council enforce its decisions?

5. In what cases do the UN members apply to the Security Council for help?

6. What other functions of the Economic and Social Council?

7. What the principle judicial organ of the UN? Who are its members elected by?

8. Who are the administrative functions of the UN carried out by?

9. Who is at the head of the Secretariat?

10. What body is the UN Secretary General appointed by?

**13. Translate the following text into Russian.**

1. The UN Charter gives the Security Council primary responsibility for maintaining international peace and security. The Council may convene at any time, day or night, whenever peace is threatened.

2. There are 15 Security Council members. Five of these – China, France, the Russian Federation, the UK and the USA – are permanent members. The other 10 are elected by the General Assembly for a two-year term. Decisions of the Council require nine yes votes.

3. When the Security Council is handling a dispute or situation the General Assembly makes no recommendations unless the Council requests it.

4. There is a big number of organizations and agencies working in partnership with the UN in various economic, scientific and technical fields.

**14. Translate the following text into English.**

1. Основной задачей Совета Безопасности является сохранение международного мира и безопасности.

2. Любая страна, являющаяся членом ООН и представленная в штаб - квартире ООН, может принимать участие в заседаниях и обсуждениях в Совете Безопасности ООН.

3. Право индивидуальной или коллективной самозащиты не запрещается для стран членов ООН. В том случае, если страна член ООН подверглась нападению, она может предпринимать необходимые действия, уведомив об этом Совет Безопасности.

4. Экономический и Социальный Совет осуществляет финансовую и техническую помощь развивающимся странам, занимается вопросами защиты беженцев и помощи детям во всем мире.

5. Международный Суд состоит из 15 судей, которые избираются Советом Безопасности и Генеральной Ассамблеей ООН.

**15. Complete the table by filling in the correct verb, noun or adjective/participle with the same root.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Verb | Noun | Adjective or Participle |
|  |  | reliable |
| to resume |  |  |
|  | cooperation |  |
| to promote |  |  |
|  | development |  |
|  |  | resolving |
|  | government |  |
| to protect |  |  |
|  | security |  |
|  |  | concerning |

**16. Use negative prefixes to the following adjectives.**

Regular, effective, friendly, reliable, ambitious, honest, pleasant

**17. Form nouns from the following adjectives.**

Confident, optimistic, strong, reliable, ambitious, anxious, enthusiastic

**18. Read about agencies related to the UN. Using the Internet resources prepare short presentations on each of the agencies.**

**Agencies related to the UN**

**(Специализированные учреждения ООН)**

Working in partnership with the UN in various economic, social, scientific and technical fields is a group of organizations related to the UN by special agreements. The agencies are:

International Atomic Energy Agency – IAEA – МАГАТЭ

International Labor Org. – ILO – Международная организация труда (МОТ)

Food and Agricultural Org. – FAO – Организация по вопросам продовольствия и сельского хозяйства (ФАО)

United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Org. – UNESCO – Организация по вопросам просвещения, науки и культуры (ЮНЕСКО)

World Health Org. – WHO – Всемирная организация ООН по вопросам здравоохранения (ВОЗ)

International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (or World Bank)

– Bank/IBRD – Международный банк реконструкции и развития

International Development Assn. – IDA – Международная ассоциация развития

International Finance Corp. – IFC– Международная финансовая корпорация

International Monetary Fund – IMF – Международный валютный фонд (МВФ)

International Civil Aviation Org. – ICAO – Международная организация гражданской авиации

Universal Postal Union – UPU – Всемирный почтовый союз

International Telecommunication Union – ITU– Международный телекоммуникационный союз

World Meteorological Org. – WMO – Международная метеорологическая организация

International Maritime Consultative Org. – IMCO – Международная морская организация

Nations Industrial Development Org. – UNIDO – Организация ООН по промышленному развитию

General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (an international commercial treaty) – GATT– Генеральное соглашение по таможенным тарифам и торговле.

**UNIT 3**

**WHAT THE UN DOES FOR PEACE**

**Text 1**

**1. Read the text. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian sentences. Title the text.**

1. Генерального Секретаря ООН назначает Генеральная Ассамблея по рекомендации Совета Безопасности.
2. Генеральный Секретарь ООН может привлечь внимание Совета Безопасности к любому вопросу, который, по его мнению, может угрожать международному миру и безопасности.
3. Человек, занимающий пост Генерального Секретаря ООН, не может быть гражданином ни одной из 5-ти стран членов Совета Безопасности.

The Secretariat is headed by the Secretary-General, who acts as the de facto spokesman and leader of the UN.

Envisioned by Franklin D. Roosevelt as a “world moderator”, the Secretary-General can bring to the Security Council`s attention “any matter which in his opinion may threaten the maintenance of international peace and security”, giving the position greater scope for action on the world stage. The position has evolved into a dual role of an administrator of the UN organization, a diplomat addressing disputes between member states and finding consensus to global issues.

The Secretary General is appointed by the General Assembly, after being recommended by the Security Council. The selection can be vetoed by any member of the Security Council, and the General Assembly can theoretically override the Security Council`s recommendation if a majority vote is not achieved, although this has not happened so far. There are no specific criteria for the post, but over the years it has become accepted that the post shall be held for one or two terms of five years, that the post shall be appointed based on geographical rotation, and that the Secretary-General shall not originate from one of the five permanent Security Council member states.

**Text 2**

**What the UN does for Peace**

1. to refrain from – воздержаться от
2. to produce dramatic results – добиться поразительных результатов
3. to defuse crisis – разрядить кризис
4. to be instrumental – быть полезным
5. hostile parties – враждующие стороны
6. to undertake mediation – предпринять посреднические меры
7. to recourse to – прибегнуть
8. ceasefire – прекращение огня
9. truce – перемирие
10. fight against terrorism – борьба с терроризмом
11. instigation – подстрекательство
12. to challenge – бросить вызов

**2. Read and translate the text.**

Preserving world peace is a central purpose of the United Nations. Under the Charter, member states agree to settle disputes by peaceful means and refrain from threatening or using force against other states.

UN efforts have produced dramatic results. The UN helped defuse the Cuban missile crisis in 1962 and the Middle East crisis in 1973. In 1988 a UN-sponsored peace settlement ended the Iran-Iraq war. In the 1990s, the UN was instrumental in restoring sovereignty to Kuwait and played a major role in ending civil wars in Cambodia, El Salvador, Guatemala and Mozambique.

UN peacemaking brings hostile parties to agreement through diplomatic means. The Security Council may to avoid conflict or restore or security peace – through negotiation, for example, or undertake mediation, or recourse to the International Court of Justice. In the event of fighting the UN tries to secure a ceasefire. It may send a peacekeeping mission to help the parties maintain the truce and to keep opposing forces apart. Peacekeeping operations may last for few months or continue for many years.

**3. Match English word combinations from the text with their Russian equivalents.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1) to produce dramatic results  2) to defuse missile crisis  3) to be instrumental  4) to restore sovereignty  5) to end wars  6) to bring hostile parties to agreement  7) through diplomatic means  8) to avoid conflict  9) to undertake mediation  10) to recourse to the International Court of Justice  11) to secure a ceasefire  12) to maintain the truce  13) to refrain from threatening or using force against other states | * + 1. обеспечить прекращение огня     2. быть полезным     3. сохранять перемирие     4. избегать конфликтов     5. прекратить войны     6. воздержаться от угрозы или применения силы против других государств     7. добиться поразительных результатов     8. разрядить кризис     9. восстановить суверенитет     10. дипломатическими средствами     11. привести враждующие стороны к соглашению     12. осуществить посредничество     13. обратиться в Международный Суд |

**4. Complete the following sentences according to the text.**

1. Under the Charter, member states agree … .
2. The UN helped defuse… .
3. In the 1990’s the UN was instrumental in … .
4. The UN played a major role in … .
5. UN peacemaking brings … .
6. The Security Council may recommend ... .
7. In the event of fighting the UN … .

**5. Answer the questions.**

* + - 1. What do the UN member states agree to under the Charter?
      2. What dramatic results have UN efforts produced?
      3. What ways may the Security Council recommend?
      4. What does the UN do in the event of fighting?
      5. What may the UN do to help the parties maintain the truce?
      6. How long may peacekeeping operations last?

**Text 3**

**Reform**

**6. Read the text and answer the questions.**

1. What calls to reform the UN have been made?
2. What has the UN been accused of?
3. Who was an official reform programme begun by?
4. What event brought together the heads of most UN member states?
5. What was the aim of the World Summit?
6. What reform of the UN did Kofi Annan propose?
7. What was the result of the Summit?

Since its founding, there have been many calls for reform of the United Nations. Some want to the UN to play a greater or more effective role in world affairs, while others want its role reduced to humanitarian work. There have also been calls for the UN Security Council’s membership to be increased, for different ways of electing the UN Secretary General.

The UN has also been accused of bureaucratic inefficiency and waste. An official reform programme was begun by Kofi Annan in 1997. Reforms mentioned include changing the permanent membership of the Security Council, making the bureaucracy more transparent, accountable and efficient, making the UN more democratic.

In September 2005, the UN convened a World Summit that brought together the heads of most member states, calling the summit “a once-in-a-generation opportunity” to take bold decisions in the areas of development, security, human rights and reform of the United Nations. Kofi Annan proposed that the summit agree to” to reform the UN, renewing the organisation’s focus on peace, security, human rights and development, and to make it better equipped at facing 21st century issues. The result of the summit was a compromise text agreed on by world leaders, which included the creation of a Peace building Commission to help countries emerging from conflict, a Human Rights Council, and agreements to devote more resources on achieving the Millennium Development Goals.

**7. Use the following plan and render the text.**

1. History of the UN
2. The UN General Assembly
3. The Security Council
4. The UN Secretary General
5. What the UN does for peace

**8. Summarize the following text in English.**

**Text 1**

За прошедшие десятилетия ООН внесла огромный вклад в обеспечение стабильности и безопасности на планете, экономическое и социальное развитие, защиту прав и свобод личности, превратилась в уникальную площадку для прямого открытого диалога по важнейшим вопросам международной жизни. И в наши дни базовые принципы и задачи, провозглашенные ООН в 1945 году, остаются актуальными и востребованными, а реализуемые под ее эгидой программы работают в интересах и на благо всего человечества.

В новом, ХХI веке, предстоит еще многое сделать для укрепления центральной координирующей роли ООН, выработки в ее рамках механизмов адекватного реагирования на возникающие риски и угрозы. Среди них – борьба с терроризмом и экстремизмом, урегулирование локальных конфликтов, ликвидация нищеты и голода, преодоление экологических кризисов. Совместными усилиями международное сообщество сумеет создать благоприятные условия для адаптации ООН к меняющимся условиям современного мира.

(из Приветствия В. Путина участникам Торжественного собрания, посвященного 60-летию ООН. 22 октября 2005 г.)

**Text 2**

После 1945 года многое в мире изменилось. Мир не стал более безопасным. На первый план вышли глобальные вызовы и угрозы безопасности и устойчивому развитию, такие как международный терроризм, распространение оружия массового уничтожения, наркотрафик, бедность, экологическая деградация.

На «Саммите-2005» в Нью Йорке все без исключения государства подтвердили свою приверженность Уставу ООН. Были приняты прорывные решения по совершенствованию под эгидой ООН единой международной стратегии в преодолении террористической угрозы.

Резолюция 1624 Совета Безопасности ООН классифицирует подстрекательство к терроризму как преступное деяние. До сих пор криминальным признавались сами теракты, действия по их организации, подготовке и финансированию, а подстрекательство к терроризму впервые классифицировано в качестве уголовного правонарушения.

Применение силы в международных отношениях возможно только на основе Устава ООН. Государства-члены ООН не будут мириться с проявлениями геноцида, массовых нарушений прав человека. В резолюции Совета Безопасности заложены положения о том, что террористические атаки на государства являются вооруженным нападением, для отражения которого страны имеют право на самооборону согласно Уставу ООН.

Адаптация ООН к новым историческим реалиям необходима. Только опираясь на широкое согласие, мы сможем выйти на дальнейшее укрепление ООН, ее авторитета.

(С.В. Лавров – Министр иностранных дел РФ)

**9. With your partner discuss the answers to the following questions.**

1. Do you think the United Nations fulfils its mission today?
2. What recent actions or peacekeeping operations of the UN can you remember? Which of them were successful?
3. Do you think that the role of the UN is really very important in the modern world?
4. Ambassador extraordinary and plenipotentiary of the Russian Federation Anatoly Torkunov said that if the UN didn`t exist, we would have to invent it. Comment on it.

5. Do you think that the UN peacekeeping forces could substitute for NATO or EU forces in the future?

|  |
| --- |
| **Grammar revision.**  **Gerund. Gerund Clauses** |

Герундий относится к неличным формам глагола, которые не могут быть сказуемыми в предложении. Герундий сочетает в себе свойства глагола и существительного. Герундий, как и глагол, имеет формы времени и залога

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | Active | Passive |
| Indefinite | writing | being written |
| Perfect | having written | having been written |

Indefinite Gerund выражает процесс в наиболее общем виде и действие, которое является одновременным действию, обозначенному глаголом в личной форме.

Perfect Gerund – выражает действие, которое предшествует действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме.

Наиболее употребительная форма герундия – Indefinite Gerund Active

**Examples:**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| The treaty cannot be signed without solving all disputable problems. | Договор не может быть подписан без решения всех спорных вопросов |
| Both leaders oppose war as a means of settling political disputes. | Оба лидера выступают против войны как средства решения политических споров. |
| You should congratulate them on having signed the treaty. | Вам следует поздравить их с подписанием Договора. |

Герундиальный оборот – (ГО) - образуется при помощи существительного или притяжательного местоимения+герундий.

ГО переводится на русский язык придаточным предложением, союзы подбираются по смыслу, герундий переводится сказуемым. На письме ГО не выделяется запятой.

**Examples:**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| The judge insisted on Jurors giving the verdict on time. | Судья настаивал на том, чтобы присяжные вовремя предоставили вердикт. |
| These happy events occured without any recommendations having been made by the UN Secretary General | Эти радостные события произошли без каких-либо рекомендаций, высказанных Генеральным Секретарем. |

**1. Translate the sentences into English.**

* + - * 1. The United Kingdom played a major role in drafting the Human Rights Convention.
  1. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) denies applying cruel, inhuman punishment to people.
  2. The Charter of the United Nations was sighed in San Francisco on June 25, 1945 after having been ratified by the great powers – the USSR, the USA, the United Kingdom, France and China.
  3. The investigator was sure of his having committed the crime.
  4. The lawyer was surprised at the Court passing such a harsh sentence.
  5. The General Assembly approved amendment to the Charter coming into force after having been ratified by a 2/3 majority.
  6. History knows a lot of examples of the achievements of the human brain being used against mankind.
  7. To achieve consistency in decisions the courts developed the practice of decisions of higher courts binding to lower courts.

**2. Open the brackets and use the gerund.**

1. (To maintain) world peace and security and (to develop) friendly relation with other nations is the main focus of the UN.
2. The task of (to preserve) peace and (to ensure) universal security is so pressing that it concerns everyone.
3. The UN formed a special committee with a definite purpose of parties (to come) at an agreed settlement.
4. Russia and the US have become the symbol of the people’s desire of (to change) their relations for the better.
5. The UN Security Council has done a great deal for (to make) specific decisions on the world arena.
6. Last night’s (to close) the UN General Assembly session took place in a solemn atmosphere.

**3. Translate into English. Use gerund.**

1. Деятельность ООН направлена на поддержание мира и безопасности и развитие дружественных отношений между народами.
2. Генеральный Секретарь ООН настаивал на том чтобы участники Ассамблеи приняли решение по этим важным вопросам незамедлительно.
3. Постоянные члены Совета Безопасности ООН воздержались от включения доклада в повестку дня.
4. В 1947 году Генеральная Ассамблея ООН приняла решение о задержании военных преступников и депортации их в страны, где они совершили преступления.
5. После того как поправки к статьям 20 и 23 были одобрены Генеральной Ассамблеей, они вступили в силу.
6. Созданная после корейской войны комиссия обвинила США в том, что они разместили ядерное оружие в Южной Корее.
7. Страны члены ООН заявили, что необходимо как можно быстрее продвигаться к тому, чтобы стороны подписали Соглашение о сокращении ядерного оружия.
8. Все инициативы России направлены на расширение и углубление процесса ослабления напряженности.
9. Полное уничтожение ядерного оружия возможно наряду с тем, что обе стороны примут решения по другим вопросам.
10. Совет Безопасности ООН приветствует мирный путь решения всеми странами спорных вопросов на Ближнем Востоке.

**UNIT 4**

**THE DECLARATION OF HUMAN RIGHTS**

**Text 1**

**Human Rights and Humanitarian Assistance**

1. the pursuit of human rights – соблюдение прав человека

2. atrocities – злодеяния, зверства

3. human rights violations – нарушение прав человека

4. to that end – для достижения этой цели

5. to take up human rights issues – рассматривать вопросы прав человека

6. high-profile positions – высокие посты

7. indigenous peoples – коренное население

8. populace – население

9. to be afflicted by – пострадать от

**1. Read the text and answer the questions.**

1. What was the central reason for creating the UN?

2. When was the Universal Declaration of Human rights adopted?

3. What principles enshrined in the Declaration are being implemented by the UN and its agencies?

4. What is the purpose of the United Nations Human Rights Council?

5. What does the Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples outline?

6. What does the Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples prohibit?

The pursuit of human rights was the central reason for creating the UN, World War II atrocities and genocide led to a ready consensus that the new organization must work to prevent any similar tragedies in the future. An early objective was creating a legal framework for considering and acting on complaints about human rights violations. The UN Charter obliges all member nations to promote “universal respect for, and observance of, “human rights” and to take “joint and separate action” to that end. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights, though not legally binding, was adopted by the General Assembly in 1948. The Assembly regularly takes up human rights issues.

The UN and its agencies are implementing the principles enshrined in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. A case in point is support by the UN for countries in transition to democracy, technical assistance in providing free and fair elections, improving judicial structures, drafting constitutions, training human rights officials. The UN has helped run elections in countries with little democratic history, including recently in Afghanistan and East Timor. The UN is also a forum to support the right of women to participate fully in the political, economic, and social life of their countries. The UN contributes to raising consciousness of the concept of human rights through its covenants and its attention to specific abuses through its General Assembly, Security Council resolutions, or International Court of Justice rulings.

The purpose of the United Nations Human Rights Council, established in 2006, is to address human rights violations. The Council is the successor to the United Nations Commission on Human Rights, which was often criticised for the high-profile positions it gave to member states that did not guarantee the human rights of their own citizens. The council has 47 members distributed by region, each serve a three year term, and may not serve three consecutive terms. A candidate to the body must be approved by a majority of the General Assembly.

The rights of some 370 million indigenous peoples around the world is also a focus for the UN, with the Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples being approved by the General Assembly in 2007. The declaration outlines the individual and collective rights to culture, language, education, identity, employment and health, thereby addressing post-colonial issues which have confronted indigenous peoples for centuries. The declaration aims to maintain, strengthen and encourage the growth of indigenous institutions, cultures and traditions. It also prohibits discrimination against indigenous peoples and promotes their active participation in matters which concern their past, present and future.

In conjunction with other organizations such as the Red Cross, the UN provides food, drinking water, shelter and other humanitarian services to populaces suffering from famine, displaced by war, or afflicted by other disasters. Major humanitarian branches of the UN are World Food Programme (which helps feed more than 100 million people a year in 80 countries), the office of the High Commissioner for Refugees with projects in over 116 countries, as well as peacekeeping projects in over 24 countries.

**2. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. The United Nations Human Rights Council 2. The United Nations Commission on Human Rights 3. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights 4. The Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples 5. The Red Cross 6. World Food Programme 7. The High Commissioner for Refugees 8. Rule of law | * + - 1. господство права       2. Декларация о правах коренного населения       3. Совет ООН по правам человека       4. Красный Крест       5. Всемирная Продовольственная Программа       6. Комиссар ООН по вопросам беженцев       7. Комиссия ООН по правам человека       8. Декларация прав человека |

**3. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give true statements.**

1. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights was adopted by the Security Council in 1945.
2. The UN Charter obliges all member nations to promote respect for and observance of human rights.
3. The UN does not support the rights of women.
4. The UN Human Rights Council was established in 2000.
5. The UN Commission on Human Rights was criticized for not taking up human rights issues regularly.
6. The Declaration of Human Rights of Indigenous Peoples does not promote the active participation in matters which concern their life

**4. Read 1-10 articles of the Declaration of Human Rights. Fill in the gaps with the words from the box.**

**The Declaration of Human Rights**

|  |
| --- |
| сharge, detention, discrimination, exile, freedoms, law, liberty, punishment, race, remedy, rights, slavery, tribunal, free |

**Article 1**

All human beings are born **free** and equal in dignity and rights.

**Article 2**

Everyone is entitled to all the rights and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ set forth in this Declaration, without distinction of any kind, such as \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status.

**Article 3**

Everyone has the right to life, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and security of person.

**Article 4**

No one shall be held in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ or servitude; slavery and the slave and the slave trade shall be prohibited in all their forms.

**Article 5**

No one shall be subjected to torture or to cruel, inhuman or degrading treatment or \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

**Article 6**

Everyone has the right to recognition everywhere as a person before the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

**Article 7**

All are equal before the law and are entitled without any \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to equal protection of the law.

**Article 8**

Everyone has the right to an effective \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ by the competent national tribunals for acts violating the fundamental rights granted him by the constitution or by law.

**Article 9**

No one shall be subjected to arbitrary arrest, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

**Article 10**

Everyone is entitled in full equality to a fair and public hearing by an independent and impartial \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, in the determination of his \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and obligations and of any criminal \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ against him.

**5. In the right column find descriptions/definitions of the words in the left column.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1) race | a) the same (adjective) |
| 2) political | b) the things that you should be allowed to have (noun) |
| 3) slavery | c) a feeling you have that you have done right or wrong (noun) |
| 4) constitution | d) to have the right to do or have something (verb) |
| 5) detention | e) difference (noun) |
| 6) tribunals | f) a group of people with distinct physical characteristics or culture (noun) |
| 7) violation | g) referring to government or party politics (adjective) |
| 8) liberty | h) having the legal power over someone or something (adjective) |
| 9) fundamental | i) the act of limiting something (noun) |
| 10) equal | j) the situation of being free (noun) |
| 11) rights | k) the situation of being a person who belongs to someone and works for them without payment (noun) |
| 12) conscience | l) the situation of having to work very hard for someone, usually in poor conditions and with very time or no pay (noun) |
| 13) entitled | m) the buying and selling of people against their will (noun: 2 words) |
| 14) obligations | n) to say that something must not happen (verb) |
| 15) degrading | o) hurting someone badly so that they are forced to give information (noun) |
| 16) impartial | p) causing fear, anguish and inferiority (adjective) |
| 17) jurisdictional | q) the unfair treatment of someone because of their colour, class, religion, language, etc (noun) |
| 18) servitude | r) the act of breaking a rule (noun) |
| 19) distinction | s) the act of encouraging, persuading or advising someone to do something morally or legally wrong (noun) |
| 20) limitation | t) a court, often one which specialises in a particular area of law (noun) |
| 21) exile | u) basic, essential (adjective) |
| 22) torture | v) laws and principles under which a country is governed (noun) |
| 23) prohibited | w) done at random, without reason (adjective) |
| 24) slave trade | x) the act of keeping someone so that he/she cannot escape or enjoy freedom (noun) |
| 25) discrimination | y) the punishment of being made to live in another country, or another part of a country (noun) |
| 26) incitement | z) not biased or prejudiced (adjective) |
| 27) arbitrary | aa) duty to do something (noun) |

**6. Read articles 11-20 of the Declaration of Human Rights. Identify a key phrase in each article.**

**Article 11**

1. Everyone charged with a penal offence has the right to be presumed innocent until proved guilty according to law in a public trial at which he/she has had all the guarantees necessary for his/her defense.
2. No one shall be held guilty of any penal offence on account of any act or omission which did not constitute a penal offence, under national or international law, at the time when it was committed. Nor shall a heavier penalty be imposed than the one that was applicable at the time the penal offence was committed.

**Article 12**

No one shall be subjected to arbitrary interference with his/her privacy, family home or correspondence, nor to attacks upon his/her honour and reputation. Everyone has the right to the protection of the law against such interference or attacks.

**Article 13**

1. Everyone has the right to freedom of movement and residence within the borders of each state.
2. Everyone has the right to leave any country, including his/her own, and to return to his/her country.

**Article 14**

1. Everyone has the right to seek and to enjoy in other countries asylum from persecution.
2. This right may not be invoked in the case of prosecutions genuinely arising from non-political crimes or from acts contrary to the purposes and principles of the United Nations.

**Article 15**

1. Everyone has the right to a nationality.
2. No one shall be arbitrary deprived of his/her nationality nor denied the right to charge his/her nationality.

**Article 16**

(1) Men and women of full age, without any limitation due to race, nationality or religion, have the right to marry and to found a family. They are entitled to equal rights as to marriage, and at its dissolution.

* 1. Marriage shall be entered into only with the free and full consent of the intending spouses.
  2. The family is the natural and fundamental group unit of society and is entitled to protection by society and state.

**Article 17**

* + 1. Everyone has the right to own property alone, as well as in association with others.
    2. No one shall be arbitrarily deprived of his/her property.

**Article 18**

Everyone has the right to freedom of thought, conscience and religion: this right includes freedom to change his/her religion or belief, and freedom, either alone or in community with others and in public or private, to manifest his/her religion or belief in teaching, practice, worship and observance.

**Article 19**

Everyone has the right to freedom of opinion and expression, this right includes freedom to hold opinions interference and to seek, receive and impart information and ideas through any media and regardless of frontiers.

**Article 20**

1. Everyone has the right to freedom of peaceful assembly and association.
2. No one shall be compelled to belong to an association.

**7. In the left column there are articles 21-30 of the Declaration of Human Rights. In the right column there are key phrases. Match them.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Article 21**  Everyone has the right to take part in their country’s political affairs either by belonging to the government themselves or by choosing politicians who have the same ideas as them. Elections should take place regularly and voting should be a secret. Every adult should have the right to vote and all votes should be equal.  **Article 22**  The society in which you live should help you to develop and to make the most of all the advantages (culture, work, social welfare) which are offered to you.  **Article 23**  Every adult has the right to a job, and to receive a salary that can support him/her and his/her family. Men and women should get paid the same amount of money for doing the same job. Anyone can join a trade union.  **Article 24**  Everyone should have the right to rest from work and to take regular paid holidays.  **Article 25**  Everyone has the right to a good life, with enough food, clothing, housing and healthcare. You should be helped if you are out of work, if you are ill, if you are old or if your husband or wife is dead. Women who are going to have a baby should receive special help. All children should have the same rights, whether their mother is married or unmarried.  **Article 26**  Everyone has the right to go to school and should go to school. Primary schooling should be free. Everyone should be able to learn a profession or continue their studies as far as people. Every-one others from different races and backgrounds. Parents should have the right to choose how and what their children lean.  **Article 27**  Everyone should have the right to share in their community`s arts and sciences. Works by artists, writers or scientists, should be protected benefit from them.  **Article 28**  There should be an order to protect your rights. It should be both local and worldwide.  **Article 29**  Everyone should have duties to other people. Human rights should be observed and protected by everyone in a spirit of mutual respect.  **Article 30**  Nobody should take away these rights and freedoms from us. | Freedom from interference in all of the above rights.  Right to desirable work and to join trade unions.  Right to rest and leisure.  Right to adequate living standards.  Right to social security.  Duty to preserve other people’s rights and freedoms.  Right to education.  Free elections and the right to participate in government.  Right to participate in the cultural life of the community.  Right to peace and other. |

**8. What articles of the Declaration of Human Rights are violated in the following situations.**

1. Children between the age of 5 and 11 have to go to school, but their parents must pay for it.
2. A man has his house broken into and his television stolen. He goes to the police but they tell him to go away because they have more important things to do.
3. Archie White, a magistrate, has his car stolen. The police arrest and charge the man they think is responsible. The next day the man is taken to court for an initial hearing. The chairman of the justices (the head magistrate) in the courtroom is Archie White. He tells the members of the public that they have to leave the courtroom.
4. Staff employed by Kaput Computers have to start work at 7 in the morning and work until 7 in the evening, with only a half hour break for lunch. They work from Monday to Saturday, and do not get paid leave.
5. A couple wants to have a baby. The government says that the country is overpopulated and tells them that they cannot have a baby yet.
6. A new government tells all public servants that they have to become a member of their political party. Anyone who refuse will lose their job.
7. John Doe is arrested because the police think he has killed someone. Before his trial has begun, a popular newspaper publishes an article about him (complete with photographs of his arrest) with the headline “Vicious murderer John Doe caught!”
8. Two friends, one white and one black, have been threatened with violence. They go to the police to ask for protection. The police agree to help the white man, but not the black man.
9. A journalist writes a newspaper article explaining why he opposes his country`s foreign policy. He is told by the government that he has become persona non-grata, he must leave the country immediately and never return.
10. A woman who lives in a capital city wants to visit her sick father, who lives 200 km away. She is told that she cannot leave the city to visit him.
11. A poor man murders someone and is sent to prison. A rich man commits a murder in similar circumstances but is allowed to go free.
12. A robber is sent to prison for 5 years. While he is in prison, the government confiscates all his belongings, and then destroys his house.
13. A man travels to another country where he asks to stay because he is frightened of remaining in his home country. He is immediately sent back to the country he came from.
14. The Republic of Istanata has never given women the right to vote.
15. At a party, a woman tells a group of friends that she thinks the government of her country is corrupt and incompetent. The next day she is arrested and never seen again.
16. A newspaper editor dislikes a famous popular actress, he publishes an article about her. The article describes the actress as ‘ugly, stupid and unable to act.’
17. A group of about 200 people hold a meeting in a public building to discuss their government’s policies. The police arrive and arrest them all.
18. The government intercepts, opens and reads one of their key opponent’s letters and other mail.
19. A famous political author writes a book criticizing the police. She then leaves her home to go on a tour to promote her book. While she is away, the police start harassing her husband and children.
20. A husband and wife get divorced. The law in their country says that in any divorce case the man automatically gets custody of the children.
21. A woman joins a trade union. The company she works for discovers this and immediately dismisses her.
22. A man loses his job and cannot find work. His country does not offer financial support for people who are out of work.
23. A 17-year-old boy murders someone a few days before his 18th birthday. He is arrested, and six months later the case goes to court. His country has the death penalty for murder if the murderer is 18 or over. The judge sentences him to death and he is executed.
24. A policeman does not like the look of a young man sitting on a park bench, so arrests him, takes him to the police station and puts him in a police cell.
25. The police suspect that a man is a member of a terrorist organization. They hit him, deprive him of food, water and sleep, and burn him with cigarettes until he confesses.
26. A poor man borrows money from a wealthy factory owner. He is unable to pay the money back. The factory owner takes the man’s 12 year-old son and makes him work in the factory to pay off the debt.
27. A new government closes all the churches, temples, mosques and synagogues in its country, and forbids anyone from attending services there.
28. A family wants to take a holiday abroad, and apply for passports. They are told that they cannot have passports and cannot go abroad.
29. Mr. Smith and Ms. Jones do exactly the same job for the same company. They have the same qualifications and the same experience. Mr. Smith receives $35000 a year, and Ms. Jones receives $28000 a year.

**9. Read the text in Russian and render it in English.**

В центре деятельности ООН находится человек, его права, свободы, интересы, поэтому основная задача организации – обеспечение и защита фундаментальных прав и свобод человека.

В настоящее время все главные органы ООН занимаются вопросами, относящимися к правам человека. Особая роль в этом принадлежит Совету Безопасности и Генеральной Ассамблее, которые уделяют специальное внимание рассмотрению грубых нарушений основных прав и свобод, угрожающих международному миру и безопасности.

В настоящее время центральным органом, на сессиях которого обсуждаются базовые вопросы, относящиеся к правам человека, является Совет ООН по правам человека.

Особое внимание Совет уделяет новым вызовам, стоящим перед человечеством: воздействие глобализации на обеспечение прав человека, бедность и права человека, терроризм и права человека, в ходе внутренних вооруженных конфликтов в отдельных странах.

Международный терроризм наносит удар по ценностям, лежащим в основе Устава ООН: уважение прав человека, верховенство права, мирное урегулирование конфликтов и споров.

**Text 2**

**International Court of Justice**

**10. Read the text. Summarize it in English.**

The International Court of Justice (ICI), located in the Hague, Netherlands, is the primary judicial organ of the United Nations. Established in 1945 by the United Nations Charter, the Court began work in 1946 as the successor to the Permanent Court of International Justice. The Statute of the International Court of Justice, similar to that of its predecessor, is the main constitutional document constituting and regulating the Court.

It is based in the Peace Palace in the Hague, Netherlands, sharing the building with the Hague Academy of International Law, a private centre for the study of international law. Several of the Court`s current judges are either alumni or former faculty members of the Academy. Its purpose is to adjudicate disputes among states. The court has cases related to war crimes, illegal state interference and ethnic cleansing, among others, and continues to hear cases.

A related court, the International Criminal Court (ICC), began operating in 2002 through international discussions initiated by the General Assembly. It is the first permanent international court charged with trying those who commit the most serious crimes under international law, including war crimes and genocide. The ICC is functionally independent of the UN in terms of personnel and financing, but some meetings of the ICC governing body, the Assembly of States Parties to the Rome Statute, are held at the UN. There is a “relationship agreement” between the ICC and the UN that governs how the two institutions regard each other legally.

**11. Translate the sentences into English.**

1. ООН проводит целенаправленную политику по повышению роли Международного Суда и обеспечению правосудия и верховенства права в международных отношениях.
2. Международный Суд – это главный судебный орган ООН и его задача в параметрах (через установление) господства права состоит в разрешении всех (потенциальных) споров между государствами.
3. Господство права – это уровень взаимодействия государств на мировой арене, когда все возникающие споры регулируются Международным Судом.
4. Международный Суд как главный судебный орган ООН содействует мирному разрешению международных споров, помогая снять напряженность между государствами и развивать их взаимоотношения на основе права и всестороннего сотрудничества

**GLOSSARY**

agenda – повестка дня

on the agenda – на повестке дня

to put on the agenda – включить в повестку дня

to call on smb. to do smth. – призывать к-л. к чему-либо

to call on UN members to furnish armed forces – призывать страны-члены ООН сформировать вооруженные силы

to convene a Summit – созывать Саммит

diplomatic relations – дипломатические отношения

to establish diplomatic relations – установить дипломатические отношения

to sever diplomatic relations – разорвать дипломатические отношения

severance of diplomatic relations – разрыв дипломатических отношений

human rights – права человека

pursuit (observance) of human rights – соблюдение прав человека

human rights violations – нарушения прав человека

to promote respect for human rights – содействовать уважению прав человека

to take up human rights issues – рассматривать вопросы о нарушениях прав человека

to maintain – сохранять

to maintain peace – сохранить мир

to maintain the truce – сохранять перемирие

mediation – посредничество

to undertake mediation – предпринять посреднические меры

peace – мир

international (world) peace – глобальный мир

to achieve world peace – добиться глобального мира

to preserve world peace - сохранить мир во всем мире

to be a threat to peace – быть угрозой миру

to threaten peace – угрожать миру

to restore peace – восстановить мир

a breach of peace – нарушение мира

to secure – обеспечить

to secure ceasefire – обеспечить прекращение огня

security – безопасность

international security – международная безопасность

to settle – решать

to settle disputes by peaceful means – решать споры мирным путем

to settle disputes through negotiations – решать спорные вопросы путем переговоров

**MODULE VIII**

**Chapter 16**

**INTERNATIONAL LAW**

**UNIT 1**

**INTRODUCTION TO INTERNATIONAL LAW**

Lead-in

1. **The term “international law” may refer to public international law, private international law and more recently supranational law.**

**Answer the following questions.**

1. What is the difference between public international law and private international law? What is supranational law?
2. How can a national state be compelled to obey international law? Can you think of any examples of a country that has violated international agreements?
3. What are the consequences if a private individual or company breaks the laws of another jurisdiction?

**Text**

**International law. Introduction**

1. public international law – международное публичное право
2. private international law – международное частное право
3. supranational law – наднациональное право
4. conflict of laws – коллизия правовых норм, коллизионное право
5. body of rules – совокупность норм
6. to govern rights and duties – регулировать права и обязанности

to govern conflicts – регулировать споры

to be in conflict with – находиться в противоречии с

1. source of law – источник права

binding source of law – обязательный источник права

1. custom – обычай

customary law – обычное право

1. customs – таможня

customs union – таможенный союз

1. charter – устав, хартия
2. to be derived from – происходить из

syn. to originate

1. to refer to – относиться, иметь отношение к

to be referred to as – называться

1. intergovernmental organization – межправительственная организация
2. principal vehicle – основной инструмент
3. to implement law – вводить законы в действие

syn. to enact

1. to enforce law – обеспечивать соблюдение законов
2. recommendatory – рекомендательный

syn. advisory

1. to develop standards – разработать стандарты
2. the World Intellectual Property Organization – Всемирная организация по вопросам интеллектуальной собственности
3. (private) individual – физическое лицо
4. business entity – юридическое лицо

syn. legal entity

1. to be concerned with – иметь дело с

syn. to deal with

1. to apply law – применять закон

applicable – применимый, подходящий

1. to be distinguished from – отличаться от
2. legal framework – правовая система
3. to unite authority – объединять власть

**2. Read and translate the text.**

In its widest sense, international law can include public international law, private international law and, more recently, supranational law. In its narrowest meaning, the term international law is used to refer to what is commonly known as public international law. Private international law is sometimes referred to as conflict of laws. Conflict of laws can also refer to conflicts between states in a federal system, such as the USA.

Public international law is the body of rules, laws or legal principles that govern the rights and duties of nation states in relation to each other. It is derived from a number of sources, including custom, legislation and treaties. Article 2 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties (1969) defines a treaty as ‘an international agreement concluded between States in written form and governed by international law …’. These treaties may be in the form of conventions, agreements and charters. Custom, also referred to as customary international law, is another binding source of law, and originates from a pattern of state practice motivated by a sense of legal right or obligation. Laws of war were a matter of customary law before being codified in the Geneva Conventions and other treaties.

International institutions and intergovernmental organizations whose members are states have become a principal vehicle for making, applying, implementing and enforcing public international law, especially since the end of World War II. The best-known intergovernmental organization is the United Nations, which develops new recommendatory standards, e.g. the Declaration of Human Rights. Other international norms and laws have been established through international agreements such as Geneva Conventions on the conduct of war or armed conflict, as well as by other international organizations, such as the World Health Organization, the World Intellectual Property Organization, the World Trade Organization and the International Monetary Fund.

Private international law refers to the body of rights and duties of private individuals and business entities of different states. It is concerned with two main questions: 1) the jurisdiction in which a case may be heard, and 2) which laws from which jurisdiction(s) apply. It is distinguished from public international law because it governs conflicts between private individuals or business entities, rather than conflicts between states or other international bodies.

Supranational law, or the law of supranational organizations, refers to regional agreements where the laws of a nation state are not applicable if in conflict with a supranational legal framework. At present, the only example of this is the European Union, which constitutes a new legal order in international law where sovereign nations have united their authority through a system of courts and political institutions.

**3. The text contains several adjectives formed with the help of different prefixes such as intergovernmental and supranational.**

a) Match the prefixes with their meanings.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. bi – | 1. many |
| 1. inter – | 1. above, beyond |
| 1. intra – | 1. two |
| 1. multi – | 1. between, among |
| 1. non – | 1. not, other than |
| 1. supra – | 1. within, inside |
| 1. super – | 1. across |
| 1. trans – | 1. over and above |

b) Match adjectives with prefixes with nouns to form collocations.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. multinational | 1. talks |
| 1. non-aligned | 1. jet plane |
| 1. intra-arterial | 1. country |
| 1. bi-lateral | 1. corporation |
| 1. supramolecular | 1. state |
| 1. transnational | 1. missile |
| 1. supersonic | 1. level |
| 1. intercontinental | 1. pressure |

**4. Translate words and word combinations from the text into Russian.**

Member-states, to become a principal vehicle for making and applying law, the body of laws or principles, nation states, to include custom, legislation and treaties; to define a treaty as, to conclude an agreement, to codify laws, to establish norms, conduct of war or armed conflict, the International Monetary Fund, to constitute a legal order, a system of courts and political institutions.

1. **Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian words and word combinations.**

Всемирная торговая организация, создавать законы посредством международных соглашений, обычное международное право, обеспечивать соблюдение законов, межправительственная организация, источники международного публичного права, коллизионное право, Декларация прав человека, заключать региональные соглашения, находиться в противоречии с наднациональным правом.

1. **Answer the following questions.**
2. What is international law in its widest sense? And its narrowest?
3. What does public international law govern?
4. What are the three main sources of public international law?
5. How is an international treaty defined?
6. What forms may it take?
7. What is the role of international institutions and international organizations today?
8. What international organizations do you know?
9. What does private international law deal with?
10. Why is it distinguished from public international law?
11. What is a supranational legal framework?
12. **Fill in the gaps with the words from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| supranational, non-governmental, inter-state, bilateral, customs-union, charter, legal framework, conflict of laws |

1. A … organization is a legally constituted organization created by private persons or organizations with no participation or representation of any government.
2. The EU is a ... organization that creates, implements and enforces policies for its members.
3. The International Court of Justice has been criticized for its failure to resolve … disputes.
4. Russia and Armenia have concluded a … agreement on trade and economic cooperation.
5. A … is a group of nations who wish to remove customs barriers between them.
6. …refers to the body of law dealing with disputes between private persons who live in different jurisdictions.
7. A ... is, in essence, a broad system of rules.
8. A ... is an agreement by which rights are granted to an international body by the signatory nations to the agreement.
9. **Translate the sentences into Russian.**
10. Public international law has three principal sources: international treaties, custom and general principles of law. General principles of law are those commonly recognized by the major legal systems of the world.
11. In some cases the Security Council can adopt resolutions related to threats to peace which are legally binding under international law and can be followed up with economic sanctions and military action.
12. International legal theory is aimed at elaborating theoretical frameworks and instruments to analyze the existing norms and to make suggestions on how to improve them.
13. The concept of the sovereign nation-state consists of a nation controlled by a centralized system of government.
14. Several democracies including India, Israel and the United States take a flexible, eclectic approach recognizing aspects of public international law such as territorial rights as universal whilst regarding other aspects as arising from treaty or custom as not being subjects of public international law at all.
15. Democracies in the developing world due to their colonial past often insist on non-interference in their internal affairs but strongly support international law at the bilateral and multilateral levels such as the United Nations.
16. **Use the text and translate the sentences into English.**
17. В самом широком смысле термин «международное право» может означать публичное международное право, частное международное право, а с недавних пор и наднациональное право.
18. Частное международное право иногда называют коллизионным правом.
19. Публичное международное право это совокупность норм и правовых принципов, которые регулируют права и обязанности национальных государств в их отношениях друг с другом.
20. Источниками международного публичного права являются договоры, обычай и общие принципы права.
21. Международные институты и межправительственные организации являются основным инструментом создания и обеспечения международного публичного права.
22. Частное международное право отличается от публичного международного права тем, что регулирует отношения между физическими и юридическими лицами, а не отношения между государствами или международными организациями.
23. В настоящее время единственным примером транснациональных отношений является Европейский Союз, в котором суверенные государства объединили свою власть через систему судов и политических институтов.
24. **Render in English the text “International law. Introduction”.**

**UNIT 2**

**SOURCES OF INTERNATIONAL LAW**

**Text**

**Sources and Scope of International Law**

1. conventional law – договорное право

2. legal obligation – правовое обязательство

3. to create law – создавать законы

4. legal responsibility – правовая ответственность

5. to agree upon – прийти к соглашению

syn. to come to an agreement

6. parties to an agreement – стороны (в договоре)

syn. contracting parties

7. to have equal authority – иметь равный авторитет

8. to assign priority to – отдавать предпочтение

9. to recognize the rule as peremptory – признавать норму императивной

10. derogation – умаление (прав).

11. to invoke a principle – применять принцип

12. to establish criteria – устанавливать критерии

13. to identify states as the principal actors – признавать государства главными действующими лицами

14. to presuppose control over territory – предполагать контроль над территорией

15. international claims – международные притязания

16. acquisition of territory – приобретение территории

17. to deal with – иметь дело с

syn. to be concerned with

18. an alien – иностранец

19. a refugee – беженец

20. to govern issues – решать вопросы

21. issues relating to the global environment – проблемы окружающей среды

22. to enter into legal commitments – вступать в договорные отношения

23. voluntary participation – добровольное участие

**1. Read and translate the text.**

Customary law and conventional law are primary [sources](http://topics.law.cornell.edu/wex/Sources_of_international_law) of international law. [Customary international law](http://topics.law.cornell.edu/wex/Customary_international_law) results when states follow certain practices generally and consistently out of a sense of legal obligation. Recently the customary law was codified in the [Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties](http://fletcher.tufts.edu/multi/texts/BH538.txt). Conventional international law derives from [international agreements](http://topics.law.cornell.edu/wex/International_conventions) and may take any form that the contracting parties agree upon. Agreements may be made in respect to any matter except to the extent that the agreement conflicts with the rules of international law incorporating basic standards of international conduct or the obligations of a member state under the [Charter of the United Nations](http://www.unhchr.ch/html/menu3/b/ch-cont.htm). International agreements create law for the parties to the agreement. They may also lead to the creation of customary international law when they are intended for adherence generally and are in fact widely accepted. Customary law and law made by international agreement have equal authority as international law. Parties may assign higher priority to one of the sources by agreement. However, some rules of international law are recognized by international community as peremptory, permitting no derogation. Such rules can be changed or modified only by a subsequent peremptory norm of international law.

General principles common to systems of national law is a secondary source of international law. There are situations where neither conventional nor customary international law can be applicable. In this case a general principle may be invoked as a rule of international law because it is a general principle common to the major legal systems of the world and not inappropriate for international claims.

International law establishes the framework and the criteria for identifying [states](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/States) as the principal actors in the international legal system. As the existence of a state presupposes control and [jurisdiction](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Jurisdiction) over territory, international law deals with the acquisition of territory, [state immunity](http://wikinfo.org/index.php?title=State_immunity&action=edit&redlink=1) and the legal responsibility of states in their conduct with each other. The law is similarly concerned with the treatment of individuals within state boundaries. There is thus a comprehensive regime dealing with group rights, the treatment of [aliens](http://wikinfo.org/index.php?title=Alien_(law)&action=edit&redlink=1), the rights of [refugees](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Refugee), [international crimes](http://wikinfo.org/index.php?title=International_crime&action=edit&redlink=1), [nationality](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Nationality) problems and [human rights](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Human_rights) generally. It further includes the important functions of the maintenance of international peace and security, arms control, the peaceful settlement of disputes and the regulation of the [use of force](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Use_of_force) in international relations. Even when the law is not able to stop the outbreak of war, it has developed principles to govern the conduct of hostilities and the treatment of [prisoners](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Prisoners_of_war). International law is also used to govern issues relating to the global environment, the global commons such as [international waters](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/International_waters) and [outer space](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Outer_space), global communications and [world trade](http://wikinfo.org/index.php?title=World_trade&action=edit&redlink=1).

Whilst [municipal law](http://wikinfo.org/index.php?title=Municipal_law&action=edit&redlink=1) is hierarchical or vertical, with the [legislature](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Legislature) enacting binding [legislation](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Legislation), international law is horizontal, with all states being [sovereign](http://wikinfo.org/index.php/Sovereign) and theoretically equal. Because of this, the value and authority of international law is dependent upon the voluntary participation of states in its formulation, observance, and enforcement. Although there may be exceptions, most states enter into legal commitments to other states out of enlightened self-interest rather than adherence to a body of law that is higher than their own.

**2. Translate words and word combinations from the text.**

1. conventional law
2. maintenance of international peace and security
3. to enter into legal commitments
4. treatment of prisoners
5. to stop the outbreak of war
6. to conflict with the law
7. peremptory norm
8. settlement of disputes
9. arms control
10. to govern the conduct of hostilities
11. contracting parties

**3. Find in the text English equivalents to the Russian words and word combinations.**

1. принимать форму
2. входить в противоречие с
3. по соглашению с
4. признавать нормы международного права
5. общие принципы
6. не соответствовать международным требованиям
7. международная правовая система
8. в границах государства
9. права человека
10. вступать в договорные отношения
11. поддержание мира и безопасности

**4. Answer the following questions.**

1. What are the primary sources of international law?

2. What law was codified in the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties?

3. Where does conventional international law derive from? What form may it take?

4. Do customary law and law made by international agreement have equal authority as international law?

5. When may a general principle be invoked as a rule of international law?

6. What does the existence of a state presuppose?

7. Has international law developed principles to govern the conduct of hostilities and the treatment of prisoners?

8. Why is the value and authority of international law dependent upon the voluntary participation of states?

**5. Write English words and word combinations instead of parenthesized Russian words.**

1. The Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties codified (обычное право).

2. Conventional international law derives from (международные соглашения).

3. International agreements (создают законы) for the parties of the agreements.

4. Customary law and law made by international agreement (имеют одинаковую силу) as international law.

5. Some rules of international law are recognized by (международное сообщество) as peremptory.

6. There are situations where (ни конституционное, ни обычное международное право) can be applicable.

7. The law is not able to stop (начало войны).

8. (Муниципальное право) is vertical.

9. International law is dependent upon (добровольное участие) of states.

**6. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. At present sources of international law also include resolutions of international organizations that are mandatory for all member-states.

2. As a source if international law the treaty is a clearly expressed agreement between subjects of international law to create norms defining mutual rights and obligations they accept as legally binding.

3. Agreements among states continue to play a leading role for states are the primary subjects of international law.

4. The basic task of international law is to contribute to a normal functioning of the international system.

5. International law does not govern relations arising within states, but it often influences them through the national law of these states.

6. The overwhelming majority of norms of modern international law are created by agreements among states.

7. The general principles of law can only be legal postulates and logical rules that are characteristic of both national legal systems and international law.

**7. Use the text and translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Основными источниками международного права являются обычное и договорное право.

2. В некоторых случаях нельзя применить ни обычное, ни договорное право.

3. Существование государства предполагает юрисдикцию и контроль над территорией.

4. Международное право используется в решении вопросов, связанных с окружающей средой.

5. Международное право признает за государствами суверенитет и равенство.

6. Важной функцией международных отношений является поддержание мира и безопасности, а также контроль над вооружениями.

7. Международное право – это особая система правовых норм, не входящих в какую-либо национальную систему права.

8. Прогрессивные нормы государств каждой исторической эпохи оказывают влияние на развитие международного права.

|  |
| --- |
| **Grammar Revision. The Subjunctive Mood. Conditional Sentences.** |

**Сослагательное наклонение**

Сослагательное наклонение показывает, что действие, выраженное глаголом, не соответствует действительности, а является желательным, маловероятным или невероятным (нереальным). На русский язык сослагательное наклонение переводится глаголом в прошедшем времени с частицей «бы». В английском языке сослагательное наклонение образуется при помощи вспомогательных глаголов:

should (1лицо) Indefinite

would (для всех Infinitive

остальных лиц) (без частицы “to”)

**Examples:**

To discuss general principles of international law would **be** useful.

Было бы полезно обсудить общие принципы международного права.

What **would** you say if you were the witness?

Что бы вы сказали, если бы были свидетелем?

It is obligatory that we **should observe** laws.

Необходимо соблюдать законы.

We demand that the criminal **should be punished**.

Мы требуем, чтобы преступник был наказан.

Сослагательное наклонение может употребляться после глагола “to wish”.

**Examples:**

I **wish** he pleaded guilty.

Я бы хотел, чтобы он признал свою вину.

**Условные предложения**

Условные предложения могут выражать реальные или нереальные условия. Они вводятся союзами if, incase, provided, unless.

**1 тип**. Условные предложения 1 типа выражают реально осуществимые условия и переводятся на русский язык изъявительным наклонением.

**Examples**:

If his guilt **is proved**, he **will be punished.**

(В придаточном предложении будущее время не употребляется, вместо него используется одна из форм настоящего, чаще всего present simple).

Если его вина будет доказана, он будет наказан.

**2 тип.** Условные предложения 2 типа выражают маловероятные условия, относящиеся к настоящему или будущему и переводятся на русский язык сослагательным наклонением.

**Examples:**

If I **were** a lawyer, I **should explain** this law to you.

Если бы я был юристом, я бы объяснил тебе этот закон.

**3 тип.** Условные предложения 3 типа выражают нереальные условия, относящиеся к прошлому и переводятся сослагательным наклонением на русский язык.

**Examples:**

If he **had been** more **careful**, he **wouldn’t have had** a car accident.

Если бы он был более внимательным, он бы не попал в автомобильную аварию.

**Смешанный тип.** Если действия главного и придаточного предложений не совпадают по времени, то мы имеем смешанный тип условного предложения.

**Examples:**

If you **had studied** English properly at school, you **would know** it now.

Если бы ты изучал английский как следует в школе, то ты знал бы его сейчас.

В условных предложениях 1 и 2 типов может иметь место инверсия (обратный порядок слов).

При этом союз, вводящий условное предложение, опускается.

**Examples:**

Were the judge more experienced he would notice some changes in the defendant’s behavior.

Если бы судья был более опытным, то он бы заметил некоторые изменения в поведении подзащитного.

He been in the courtroom then, he would have heard the sentence pronounced by the judge.

Если бы он был тогда в суде, он бы услышал приговор, вынесенный судьей.

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Condition | | Subordinate Clause | Principal Clause | Translation |
| Real | | If it looks like rain,  If I have more time,  If he is working on  Friday  Present Ind./Cont. | We’ll stay at home  I’ll come over.  he won`t be able to go with us  Will + Infinitive | бы |
| Unreal | Present/  Future | If I were you,  If I had more time,  If you knew him better,  If it were not raining,  Past Ind./Cont. | I would go there.  I would come over.  You wouldn’t think so.  I could go out.  Would  Could + Infinitive  Might | бы |
| Past | If you had gone there,  If it hadn’t been so hot  last summer  Past Perfect | you would have seen him.  we could have gone to the South.  Would  Could + have + Participle II  Might |

1. **Translate sentences into Russian.**
2. It is evident that conventional international law should take any form that the contracting parties agree upon.
3. It is obligatory that agreements should not conflict with the rules of international law.
4. It is necessary that customary law and law made by international agreement should have equal authority as international law.
5. The secretary demanded that the documents should be submitted without delay.
6. I wish general principles common to systems of national law were observed.
7. **Translate sentences into English.**
8. Необходимо, чтобы стороны действовали в рамках Венской конвенции.
9. Важно, чтобы соблюдалась Декларация прав человека.
10. Ситуация требует, чтобы суверенные государства объединили свои усилия.
11. Необходимо, чтобы все помнили, что международный договор является главным источником международного права.
12. Жаль, что стороны не пришли к соглашению.

**3. Translate sentences into Russian.**

1. Even if the law is not able to stop the outbreak of war, it will govern the conduct of hostilities.
2. If the laws of a nation-state were applicable in regional agreements there would be no need for supranational law.
3. If the United Nations hadn`t developed new advisory standards, there would be no Declaration of Human Rights.
4. Had the circumstances been more favourable the parties would have come to an agreement.
5. If the East African community becomes a political federation, it will be another example of a supranational legal framework alongside with the European Union.

**4. Translate sentences into English.**

1. Если бы сопротивление враждующих сторон было преодолено, мир был бы установлен.
2. Если бы не было Венской конвенции, многие международные проблемы было бы трудно разрешить.
3. Если бы не соблюдались принципы международного права, не удавалось бы избегать международных конфликтов.
4. Если мы обратимся к статье 2 Венской конвенции, то найдем там определение договора.
5. Если вы разбираетесь в вопросах международного публичного права, то сможете выступить на конференции.

**UNIT 3**

**SUBJECTS OF INTERNATIONAL COMMUNITY**

1. **The scheme shows the subjects of international law. Translate them into Russian. Which of them are primary and which of them are secondary/derivative.**

**SUBJECTS OF INTERNATIONAL COMMUNITY**

**STATES**

**INSURGENTS**

**LEGAL ENTITIES**

**INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS**

**NATIONAL LIBERATION MOVEMENTS**

**INDIVIDUALS**

**Text**

**Subjects of International Community**

1. backbone of the community – основа сообщества

2. to possess full legal capacity – обладать полной правоспособностью

3. to be vested with rights – быть наделенным правами

4. to fall apart – распадаться

5. insurgents – мятежники, повстанцы

6. to assert oneselves – самоутверждаться

7. provisional existence – временное существование

8. a fully-fledged state – полностью сложившееся государство

9. to be defeated – потерпеть поражение

1. **Read the text. Answer the questions.**

1. What are the legal subjects in national systems? Which of them are primary?

2. What are the primary subjects in the international community?

3. How are states defined in international law?

4. What does “full legal capacity” mean?

5. Are states of the international community equal?

6. Who are insurgents?

7. Which subjects of the international community are traditional and which are relatively new?

8. Which subjects of the international community possess “limited legal capacity”?

National systems comprise very many legal subjects: citizens, foreigners residing in the territory of the State, corporate bodies and State institutions (if endowed with legal personality). Individuals are the primary subjects in national legal systems. In contrast, the legal subjects of the international community are relatively few. In addition, the fundamental or primary subjects are not individuals, but States. They are entities which, besides controlling territory in a stable and permanent way, exercise the principal lawmaking and executive functions proper of any legal order. All other subjects either exercise effective authority over territory for a limited period of time only or have no territorial basis whatsoever. States, therefore, are the backbone of the community. They possess full legal capacity, that is, the ability to be vested with rights, powers, and obligations. Were they to disappear, the present international community would either fall apart or change radically. For historical reasons, there are at present about two hundred States including a few mini-States. In principle, all States are equal. However, one particular class, a handful of States with strong economic and military systems, holds authority in the international community.

There is another category of international subjects, namely, insurgents, who come into being through their struggle against the State to which they belong. They are born from a wound in the body of a particular State and are not, therefore, easily accepted by the international community unless they can prove able to exercise some of the sovereign rights typical of States. They assert themselves by force and acquire international status proportionate to their power and authority. However, their existence is by definition provisional: they either win and turn into fully fledged States or are defeated and disappear.

States and insurgents are traditional subjects of the international community in the sense that they have been the principal actors on the international scene since its inception. In the twentieth century and increasingly after the Second World War, other poles of interest and activity have gained international status. They are: international organizations, national liberation movements and individuals. The emergence of these relatively new subjects is a distinct feature of modern international law.

Unlike States, all the other international subjects just mentioned, on account of their inherent characteristics (e.g. lack of permanent or at least stable authority over a territory, etc.) possess a limited capacity in the area of international rights and obligations. They also have a limited capacity to act, that is, to put into effect their rights and powers, in judicial and other proceedings or to enforce their rights.

1. **Find in the text English equivalents of the Russian word combinations.**

1) главные субъекты права

2) правопорядок

3) осуществлять эффективную власть над

4) обладать правоспособностью

5) быть признанным международным сообществом

6) повстанцы, мятежники

7) быть наделенным правами и полномочиями

8) самоутверждаться

9) временное существование

10) превратиться в полноценное государство

11) получить международный статус

12) национально-освободительное движение

13) отличительная черта современного права

14) отсутствие постоянного контроля над территорией

15) претворять в жизнь права и полномочия

1. **Fill in the gaps with the words from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| CITIZEN, FOREIGNER, INDIVIDUAL,  INSURGENT, SUBJECT |

1. … is a person born in another country and speaking another language.

2. … is a freeman, enfranchised member of a State.

3. … is a member participating in rebel.

4. …is a person owing allegiance to government or ruling power.

5. … is a single member of the class or group.

1. **Fill in the blanks with the words from the text.**

1. … assert themselves by force and acquire international status proportionate to their power and authority.

2. … are the primary subjects in national legal systems.

3. States and insurgents are traditional … of the international community.

4. ... possess full legal capacity, that is, the ability to be vested with rights, powers and obligations.

1. **Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. The legal subjects of the international community are numerous.

2. Individuals are the primary subjects of international law.

3. States are entities which, besides controlling territory in a stable and permanent way, exercise the principal lawmaking and executive functions proper of any legal order.

4. Insurgents are easily accepted by the international community.

5. States and insurgents are traditional subjects on the international scene.

6. National liberation movements possess unlimited legal capacity in the area of international rights and obligations.

1. **Use the text Subjects of International Community”. Translate the following text into English.**

Субъекты занимают центральное положение в международном праве, которое призвано регулировать их взаимоотношения. Особенность положения субъектов международного права состоит в том, что они не только выступают носителями прав и обязанностей, но и играют главную роль в создании и реализации международно-правовых норм. Субъект международного права – это носитель международных прав и обязанностей, возникших в соответствии с общими нормами международного права либо международно-правовыми предписаниями.

Существует две категории субъектов международного права: первичные (суверенные) и производные.

Государства являются первичными субъектами международного права в силу присущего им национального суверенитета и признаются носителями международных прав и обязанностей. Суверенитет делает их независимыми от других субъектов международного права и предопределяет возможность самостоятельного участия в международных отношениях.

Государства выступают наиболее полновластными и организованными субъектами международного права, имеющими решающие средства воздействия на международные отношения и обладающими универсальным правом участвовать в любых международно-правовых действиях.

Государство характеризует три элемента: население, территория и суверенная власть. Территориально-организационная структура государства может быть различной.

1. **Translate the sentences into Russian. Identify the type of a Conditional.**

1. Were states to disappear, the present international community would either fall apart or change radically.

2. Insurgents are born from a wound in the body of a particular State and are not, therefore, easily accepted by the international community unless they can prove able to exercise some of the sovereign rights typical of States.

3. Had a State, or group of States, proved strong enough to claim and enforce the exclusive rights to use that thereof, it would have had no hesitation in depriving other members of the international community of access thereto.

4. If the insurrection is widespread and protracted in time, and rebels come to acquire stable control over a part of the territory, the central authorities or third States may grant the recognition of belligerency.

1. **On your own prepare a presentation on one of the subjects of International Law. Use the scheme (Ex. 1).**

**UNIT 4**

THE LAW OF TREATIES

**Text 1**

**Treaties**

1. instrument – (международный) договор
2. common title – общее название
3. preamble – преамбула, вступление
4. in simplified form – в упрощенной форме
5. to be cloaked with (authority) – быть наделенным (властью)

syn. to be vested with

1. to set forth (the rights and obligations) – излагать (права и обязанности)
2. to comprise provisions – содержать положения
3. to enter into force – вступать в силу

entry into force – вступление в силу

1. termination of the treaty – прекращение действия договора
2. accession – присоединение (к международному договору)
3. seal – печать
4. to clarify – прояснять
5. to be authentic – зд. быть основным
6. mutual relations – взаимоотношения
7. to conclude a treaty – заключить договор
8. to distinguish between – делать различие между
9. **Read and translate the text.**

Over the past centuries, state practice has developed a variety of terms to refer to international instruments by which states establish rights and obligations among themselves. "Treaty" is the most common title of an international agreement but the following are also used: convention, act, general act, protocol, agreement, modus vivendi, concordance, charter, declaration, and compromise. Although there is no officially correct form, treaties generally comprise four parts: the title, the preamble, the main body, and the final part.

a. Title: A description of the type of treaty and the subject matter, the title often also includes the names of the contracting parties. Treaties concluded in simplified form do not usually have titles.

b. Preamble: Following the title and serving as an introduction, the preamble states the reasons for the treaty, the names of the negotiating representatives, and the authority with which the representative is cloaked.

c. Main body: This sets forth the rights and obligations of the parties.

d. Final part: The final part comprises the provisions setting forth the guidelines for entry into force, termination of the treaty, revisions, accessions, reservation, publication, and languages in which the text will be written. The treaty finally concludes with the date and place of conclusion and the signatures and seals of the contracting parties.

Language: There is no universal rule as to what language or what number of languages must be utilized for the text of the treaty. Rather, the language of the treaty is selected by the contracting parties. When a treaty is published in more than one language, the treaty itself should clarify which text is to be the authentic and authoritative one.

Although these instruments differ from each other by title, they all have common features and international law has applied basically the same rules to all of these instruments. These rules are the result of long practice among the States, which have accepted them as binding norms in their mutual relations. Therefore, they are regarded as international customary law. Since there was a general desire to codify these customary rules, two international conventions were negotiated. The 1969 Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties ("1969 Vienna Convention"), which entered into force on 27 January 1980, contains rules for treaties concluded between States. The 1986 Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organizations or between International Organizations ("1986 Vienna Convention"), which has still not entered into force, added rules for treaties with international organizations as parties. Both the 1969 Vienna Convention and the 1986 Vienna Convention do not distinguish between the different designations of these instruments. Instead, their rules apply to all of those instruments as long as they meet certain common requirements.

The Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties defines a treaty as "an international agreement concluded between States in written form and governed by international law, whether embodied in a single instrument, or in two or more related instruments and whatever its particular designation."

1. **Translate into Russian words and word combinations from the text.**

1) subject matter

2) negotiating representatives

3) customary rules

4) modus vivendi

5) international instrument

6) to establish rights

7) contracting parties

8) to enter into force

9) accession

10) to comprise provisions

1. **Find in the text English equivalents to the Russian words and word combinations.**

1) международный договор

2) состоять из 4-х частей

3) служить предисловием

4) права и обязанности сторон

5) прекращение действия договора

6) оговорка

7) общие черты

8) являться результатом

9) кодифицировать правовые нормы

10) в письменном виде

1. **Read the text again. Answer the questions.**

1. What is the most common title of an international agreement?

2. What other titles of “treaty” are listed in the text?

3. How many parts does a treaty comprise? What are they?

4. Which part of a treaty sets forth the rights and obligations of the parties?

5. Are there any rules as to what language or what number of languages must be utilized in a treaty?

6. How does the Vienna Convention define a treaty?

1. **Write English words instead of parenthesized Russian words.**

1) “Treaty” is the most common title of (международного договора).

2) Treaties generally comprise the title, the preamble, the main body and (заключительную часть).

3) The main body of the agreement sets forth (права и обязанности сторон).

4) The treaty finally concludes with the date and place of conclusion and (подписями и печатями) of the contracting parties.

5) The rules are the result of long practice among the States, which (приняли) them as binding norms in their mutual relations.

6) These binding norms (считаются) as international customary law.

7) Since there was a desire (кодифицировать) these customary rules, two international conventions were negotiated.

8) The 1969 Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties (вступила в силу) on 27 January 1980.

9) Both Conventions (не делают различия между) the different designations of the instruments used.

10) The rules apply to all the instruments as long as they meet certain (общие требования).

**Text 2**

The Classification of Treaties

**1. Read the text.**

There exist different classifications of treaties. Political treaties include alliances, peace settlements, disarmament agreements, and territorial settlements. Commercial treaties deal with tariffs, fishing rights, navigation, and the opening of consulates and offices of tourism. Some treaties are constitutional or administrative documents. The United Nations Charter is an example. Such treaties establish and regulate international organizations and specialized agencies. There are treaties that deal with criminal justice, that define international crimes such as terrorism, and that provide for extradition, or the process by which one state surrenders to another an individual for trial. Treaties pertaining to civil law are conventions for the protection of human rights and for the enforcement of trade mark and copyright laws. The codifying of international law also comes within the scope of treaties. These include rules for the conduct of war and the settlement of disputes. A single treaty often embraces several of these elements.

The principle that treaties must be observed – pacta sunt servanda*–* constitutes the foundation of the law of treaties. The Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties states this as follows: “Every treaty in force is binding upon the parties to it and must be performed by them in good faith.” This means that each treaty that is legitimately in force is legally binding on all signatories. It must be carried out in good faith, i.e. not formally but honestly; each signatory State has the duty to take all measures necessary to carry out the treaty's provisions in accordance with its aims and principles. The principle of good faith prohibits abuses of treaty rights – that is, their use to the disadvantage of the legitimate rights and interests of other States. Finally, an important substantive element of the principle that “treaties must be observed” is that a State may refuse to implement a treaty or limit its implementation only on the basis of international law. A signatory State does not have the right to refer to its own domestic law to justify the non-execution of treaties.

**2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian words and word combinations. Use them in the sentences of your own.**

1. установление мира
2. урегулирование территориальных споров
3. соглашение о разоружении
4. торговый договор
5. заниматься уголовным судопроизводством
6. предусматривать выдачу преступника властям
7. иметь отношение к гражданскому праву
8. защищать авторские права
9. товарный знак
10. урегулировать споры
11. соблюдать договор
12. являться обязательным
13. добросовестно выполнять обязательства
14. подписавшаяся сторона
15. злоупотребление договорными правами

**3. Summarize the text.**

**4. Translate the sentences from the table into English. Speak about the foundation principle of the Law of Treaties “pacta sunt servanda”.**

|  |
| --- |
| PACTA SUNT SERVANDA |
| 1. Добросовестное выполнение своих международных обязательств всеми государствами. |
| 2. Неукоснительное выполнение своих международных обязательств независимо от внутренних и внешних условий. |
| 3. Нарушение договора не может оправдываться ссылкой государства на свое внутреннее право. |
| 4*.* Договоры, заключаемые государством, не должны противоречить друг другу. |
| 5. Государство не вправе произвольно прекращать или пересматривать свои договоры. |
| 6. Форма договора не умaляет его обязательств. |
| 7. Разрыв дипломатических отношений государствами не препятствует соблюдению ими договоров. |

**Text 3**

**The Conclusion of Treaties**

**1. Read the text. Title parts (B-H).**

A. Stages in the Conclusion of Treaties

The conclusion of an international treaty consists of two stages:

a) the first stage is a harmonizing of wills of States or of other subjects of international law with regard to rules of conduct, i.e. concerning the text of the treaty. In concluding bilateral treaties this includes negotiations between parties and arriving at accord on the text of the treaty. In concluding multilateral treaties this stage consists in the drafting and adoption of the text of the treaty by the corresponding international conference or organ of an international organization. At multilateral conferences the text of the treaty is adopted by a two-thirds majority of the participants unless other provisions are made.

b) the second stage concerns a harmonizing of the wills of States concerning their recognition of the norms of the treaty as binding and consists of individual actions by States that may differ depending on the relevant terms of specific treaties (signing, ratification, etc).

B.

Although the Vienna Convention itself does not provide a definition, “adoption” is generally defined as the formal act signifying that the form and content of the treaty have been agreed upon. Adoption signifies that the negotiations have been completed, disputed points have been resolved, and the wording of the final document agreed.

C.

The signing of the treaty may, by itself, signify the state's definitive consent to be bound when: the treaty states that the signature is a signal of the state’s definitive consent; it is otherwise established by the contracting parties; or intent that the signature establishes definitive consent is indicated from the “full powers” document or otherwise expressed during the negotiations.

D.

Historically, ratification was the process of verifying the authority given the representatives who had negotiated and signed a treaty, but the modern understanding in many states is that ratification is a check on the treaty-making powers of the executive branch by passing the treaty through the parliamentary/legislative branch of government. Ratification provides an additional opportunity to carefully consider the rights and obligations of a treaty before consenting to be bound by its terms. The law of treaties, as reflected in the Vienna Convention, does not require ratification for a state to be bound by a treaty, and many informal international agreements bind parties on the basis of a signature alone.

E.

Accession is the process by which a state which was not a signatory of the treaty may nevertheless become a party to the treaty and be bound to its terms. Parties to a treaty are not given different treatment according to the manner in which they became parties.

F.

Article 14 of the Vienna Convention refers to “acceptance” as “an expression of consent to be bound either without a signature or after a non-binding prior signature.” Acceptance is not so much an actual method of consent as it is a term seen in treaty provisions, the meaning of which varies according to the context.

G.

The term “approval” was introduced into international law to correspond to the internal procedures of states which call for the “approval” of treaties.

H.

Entry into force is the actual implementation of the treaty’s terms and in the Vienna Convention is governed by article 24. Entry into force often occurs when specific requirements laid out in the treaty have been met.

**2. Use the text and complete the sentences.**

1. Consent may be expressed in many ways: ... .

2. “Adoption” is generally defined as ... .

3. Ratification is a check on the treaty-making powers of the executive branch by passing the treaty through ... .

4. Accession is the process by which a state which was not a signatory of the treaty may ... .

5. “Acceptance” is an expression of consent to be bound either without a signature or after ... .

6. Entry into force often occurs when specific requirements ... .

**3. Use the table. Speak about the conclusion of treaties.**

**Treaty process**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Negotiation |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| adoption |  | Signature |
|  |  |  |
| authentication |  | exchange of instruments |
|  |  |  |
| conclusion |  | acceptance |
|  |  |  |
| entry into force |  | approval |
|  |  |  |
|  |  | accession |
|  |  |  |
|  |  | ratification |

**UNIT 5**

**INTERNATIONAL LEGAL PROTECTION OF THE ENVIIRONMENT**

**Text**

**The Concept of International Legal Protection of the Environment**

1. (natural) environment – окружающая среда

to protect the environment – защищать окружающую среду

2. productive forces – зд. промышленное производство

3. to intensify the impact on – усиливать воздействие на

4. economic activities – экономическая деятельность

5. intervention in natural processes – вмешательство в природу

6. natural resources – природные ресурсы

rational utilization of natural resources – разумное использование природных ресурсов

7. to bring to the brink of ecological crisis – привести на грань экологической катастрофы

8. urgent problem – проблема, требующая безотлагательного решения

9. pollution of the planet’s biosphere – загрязнение биосферы планеты

syn. contamination

radioactive contamination – радиоактивное загрязнение

10. animal and plant world – животный и растительный мир

11. to adopt a resolution – принимать резолюцию

1. **Read and translate the text.**

The revolution in science and technology and the rapid development of the productive forces of society have intensified the impact of man’s economic activities on the natural environment, and have considerably widened the sphere of his intervention in natural processes. The intensive utilization of natural resources and the pollution of the planet's biosphere have brought the human race to the brink of a serious ecological crisis. Consequently, the protection of the environment and the rational utilization of natural resources have become urgent global problems of the modern age.

Naturally, these problems cannot be solved by the efforts of individual States alone. National measures to protect the environment must be combined with wide international cooperation at the global and regional levels. International law is called upon to play a leading role in establishing and developing such cooperation and regulating the measures undertaken by various States to protect the environment.

The international legal protection of the environment is a relatively new but rapidly developing part of modern international law. At the present time, there are a number of international treaties of different kind governing various aspects of the protection of the environment and the rational utilization of natural resources. These agreements primarily concern the following:

1. the prevention of the pollution of maritime waters, the protection and rational utilization of the sea’s living resources;
2. the protection of the waters and resources of international (multinational) rivers;
3. the protection of the Earth's atmosphere and outer space from pollution and other unfavourable influences;
4. the protection and rational utilization of the animal and plant world on land;
5. the protection of unique natural objects and complexes and of individual ecological systems;
6. the protection of the Earth's environment from radioactive contamination.

The international legal regulation of the environment protection measures undertaken by different states has unquestionably been influenced by the many universal international treaties which either contain important provisions relating to the protection of the environment, or else are directly or indirectly contributing to the improvement of the planetary environment.

In addition to international treaties, international custom also plays an important role in the protection of the environment.

An important role in the development of the international legal protection of the environment is played by resolutions adopted by international organizations, and above all by the United Nations and its specialized agencies.

1. **Translate into Russian words and word combination from the text.**
2. rapid development of the productive forces
3. man’s economic activities
4. intervention in natural processes
5. natural resources
6. ecological crisis
7. urgent global problems
8. to intensify the impact on the environment
9. rational utilization of natural resources
10. unfavourable influences
11. pollution of maritime waters

**3. Find in the text English equivalents to the Russian word combinations.**

1. вносить вклад в
2. окружающая среда
3. загрязнение биосферы планеты
4. защищать окружающую среду
5. принять меры
6. предотвращение загрязнения
7. неблагоприятное влияние
8. радиоактивное загрязнение
9. расширять сотрудничество
10. насущные мировые проблемы

**4. Answer the questions.**

1. What has intensified the impact of man’s economic activities on the natural environment?

2. What has brought the human race to the brink of a serious ecological crisis?

3. What are the most urgent global problems of the modern age?

4. Can these problems be solved by the efforts of individual States alone?

5. That must national measures to protect the environment be combined with?

6. Is the international legal protection of the environment a relatively new part of modern international law?

7. What do modern international treaties on the protection of the environment concern?

8. What is the role of the United Nations in the development of the international legal protection of the environment?

**5. Write English words and word combinations instead of Russian parenthesized words.**

1. The intensive (использование природных ресурсов) and (загрязнение биосферы планеты) have brought the human race to the brink of a serious ecological crisis.

2. National measures (защиты окружающей среды) must be combined with wide (международным сотрудничеством) at the global and regional levels.

3. There are a number of (международных договоров) governing various aspects of (защиты окружающей среды).

4. The protection of (загрязнение мирового бассейна) is a very important task.

5. (Защита атмосферы земли) is one of the most urgent global problems.

6. (Рациональное использование животного и растительного мира) is essential.

7. (Радиоактивное загрязнение) is a great threat to global security.

8. Rapid development of (промышленного производства) has widened the sphere of intervention in natural processes.

**6. Choose one of the topics and make a presentation.**

1. International law and the protection of natural environment.

2. The basic principles of international legal protection of the environment.

3. Armed conflicts and environmental protection as addressed by international environmental law.

4. The issues of utilization of natural resources in international environmental law.

5. The role of the United Nations and other international organizations in the development of the international legal protection of the environment.

**GLOSSARY**

acceptance – официальное принятие к сведению

accession – присоединение (к международному договору)

to acquire (territory) – приобретать

acquisition – приобретение

to adopt (a resolution) – принимать

adoption – принятие

bilateral – двусторонний

commitment – обязательство

to enter into legal commitments – вступать в договорные обязательства

conflict – конфликт, противоречие

to be in conflict with – находиться в противоречии

to govern conflicts – урегулировать конфликты

conflict of laws – коллизионное право

contamination – загрязнение

radioactive contamination – радиоактивное загрязнение

custom – обычай

customary law – обычное право

entity – самостоятельное образование

legal entity – юридическое лицо

to enter into force – вступать в силу

entry into force – вступление в силу

environment – окружающая среда

to protect the environment – защищать окружающую среду

extradition – выдача (преступника)

instrument – (международный) договор

an insurgent – мятежник, повстанец

law – право

public international law – международное публичное право

private international law – международное частное право

supranational law – наднациональное право

conventional law– договорное право

to maintain – поддерживать

to maintain peace and security – поддерживать мир и безопасность

multilateral – многосторонний

a party – сторона (в договоре)

parties to an agreement

syn. contracting parties

peremptory (norm) – императивный

pollution – загрязнение (окружающей среды)

ratification – ратификация, скрепление подписью

to settle – урегулировать

settlement – урегулирование

peaceful settlement – мирное урегулирование

settlement of disputes – урегулирование споров

signatory – подписывающая сторона

source – источник

(binding) source of law – (обязательный) источник права

termination – прекращение (срока действия договора)

treatment (of) – обращение с

treaty– договор

to conclude a treaty – заключить договор

to be vested with – быть наделенным (властью)